PMATH365 — Differential Geometry

Classnotes for Winter 2019

by

Johnson Ng

BMath (Hons), Pure Mathematics major, Actuarial Science Minor

University of Waterloo

Table of Contents

Ta	able of Contents	2
Li	ist of Definitions	6
Li	ist of Theorems	10
Li	ist of Procedures	13
Pr	reface	15
Ι	Exterior Differential Calculus	
1	Lecture 1 Jan 07th	19
	1.1 Linear Algebra Review	19
	1.2 Orientation	22
	1.3 Dual Space	24
2	Lecture 2 Jan 09th	25
	2.1 Dual Space (Continued)	25
	2.2 Dual Map	29
3	Lecture 3 Jan 11th	31
	3.1 Dual Map (Continued)	31
	3.1.1 Application to Orientations	33
	3.2 The Space of k -forms on V	33
4	Lecture 4 Jan 14th	37
	4.1 The Space of k -forms on V (Continued)	37

	4.2 Decomposable <i>k</i> -forms	38
5	Lecture 5 Jan 16th	45
	5.1 Decomposable <i>k</i> -forms Continued	45
	5.2 Wedge Product of Forms	45
	5.3 Pullback of Forms	48
II	The Vector Space \mathbb{R}^n as a Smooth Manifold	
6	Lecture 6 Jan 18th	53
	6.1 The space $\Lambda^k(V)$ of k -vectors and Determinants	53
	6.2 Orientation Revisited	59
	6.3 Topology on \mathbb{R}^n	60
7	Lecture 7 Jan 21st	63
	7.1 Topology on \mathbb{R}^n (Continued)	63
	7.2 Calculus on \mathbb{R}^n	64
	7.3 Smooth Curves in \mathbb{R}^n and Tangent Vectors	68
8	Lecture 8 Jan 23rd	69
	8.1 Smooth Curves in \mathbb{R}^n and Tangent Vectors (Continued)	69
9	Lecture 9 Jan 25th	7 5
	9.1 Derivations and Tangent Vectors	75
10	Lecture 10 Jan 28th	81
	10.1 Derivations and Tangent Vectors (Continued)	81
	10.2 Smooth Vector Fields	85
11	Lecture 11 Jan 30th	89
	11.1 Smooth Vector Fields (Continued)	89
	11.2 Smooth 1-Forms	92
12	Lecture 12 Feb 01st	97
	12.1 Smooth 1-Forms (Continued)	97
	12.2 Smooth Forms on \mathbb{R}^n	100
13		105
	13.1 Wedge Product of Smooth Forms	105
	and Dealling the of Councille Forms	

4 TABLE OF CONTENTS - TABLE OF CONTENTS

14	Lecture 14 Feb 08th	111
	14.1 Pullback of Smooth Forms (Continued)	111
15	Lecture 15 Feb 11th	117
	15.1 The Exterior Derivative	117
	15.1.1 Relationship between the Exterior Derivative and the Pullback	121
III	Submanifolds of \mathbb{R}^n	
16	Lecture 16 Feb 13th	125
	16.1 Submanifolds in Terms of Local Parameterizations	125
17	Lecture 17 Feb 25th	131
	17.1 Submanifolds in Terms of Local parameterizations (Continued)	131
18	Lecture 18 Feb 27th	137
	18.1 Submanifolds as Level Sets	137
	18.2 Local Description of Submanifolds of \mathbb{R}^n	141
19	Lecture 19 Mar 01st	143
	19.1 Local Description of Submanifolds of \mathbb{R}^n (Continued)	143
	19.2 Smooth Functions and Curves on a Submanifold	145
	19.3 Tangent Vectors and Cotangent Vectors on a Submanifold	148
20	Lecture 20 Mar 04th	149
	20.1 Tangent Vectors and Cotangent Vectors on a Submanifold (Continued)	149
21	Lecture 21 Mar 06th	155
	21.1 Tangent Vectors and Cotangent Vectors on a Submanifold (Continued 2)	155
22	Lecture 22 Mar 08th	161
	22.1 Tangent Vectors and Cotangent Vectors on a Submanifold (Continued 3)	161
	22.2 Smooth Vector Fields and Forms on a Submanifold	161
23	Lecture 23 Mar 11th	167
	23.1 Smooth Vector Fields and Forms on a Submanifold (Continued)	167
24	Lecture 24 Mar 13th	171
	24.1 Orientability and Orientation of Submanifolds	171
25	Lecture 25 Mar 15th	177

	25.1 Orientability and Orientation of Submanifolds (Continued)	177
IV	Stokes' Theorem and deRham Cohomology	
26	Lecture 26 Mar 18th	185
	26.1 Partitions of Unity	185
27	Lecture 27 Mar 20th	193
	27.1 Partitions of Unity (Continued)	193
	27.2 Integration of Forms	194
28	Lecture 28 Mar 22nd	197
	28.1 Integration of Forms (Continued)	197
	28.2 Submanifolds with Boundary	199
29	Lecture 29 Mar 25th [dirty]	203
	29.1 Submanifold with Boundary (Continued)	203
30	Lecture 31 Mar 29th [dirty]	209
	30.1 Stokes' Theorem (Continued)	209
V	Differential Geometry	
31	Lecture 32 Apr 01st [dirty]	217
	31.1 More Linear Algebra	217
	31.1.1 Hodge Star Operators	217
A	Additional Topics / Review	223
	A.1 Rank-Nullity Theorem	223
	A.2 Inverse and Implicit Function Theorems	225
Bil	bliography	227
Ind	dex	228

List of Definitions

1	Definition (Linear Map)	19
2	E Definition (Basis)	20
3	E Definition (Coordinate Vector)	20
4	E Definition (Linear Isomorphism)	22
5	E Definition (Same and Opposite Orientations)	23
6	■ Definition (Dual Space)	24
7	■ Definition (Natural Pairing)	26
8	■ Definition (Double Dual Space)	27
9	■ Definition (Dual Map)	29
10	□ Definition (<i>k</i> -Form)	33
11	\blacksquare Definition (Space of k -forms on V)	37
12	■ Definition (Decomposable <i>k</i> -form)	40
13	■ Definition (Wedge Product)	45
14	☐ Definition (Degree of a Form)	46
15	■ Definition (Pullback)	48
16	\blacksquare Definition (k^{th} Exterior Power of T)	54
17	■ Definition (Determinant)	54
18	■ Definition (Orientation)	59
19	☐ Definition (Distance)	60
20	■ Definition (Open Ball)	61
21	■ Definition (Closed)	63
22	■ Definition (Continuity)	64
23	■ Definition (Homeomorphism)	64
24	■ Definition (Smoothness)	65
25	■ Definition (Diffeomorphism)	65

26	■ Definition (Differential)	66
27	■ Definition (Smooth Curve)	68
28	■ Definition (Velocity)	69
29	■ Definition (Equivalent Curves)	70
30	■ Definition (Tangent Vector)	71
31	■ Definition (Tangent Space)	71
32	■ Definition (Directional Derivative)	75
33	$\blacksquare \text{ Definition } (f \sim_p g) \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots $	78
34	Definition (Germ of Functions)	78
35	■ Definition (Derivation)	81
36	■ Definition (Tangent Bundle)	85
37	■ Definition (Vector Field)	86
38	Definition (Smooth Vector Fields)	86
39	\blacksquare Definition (Derivation on C_p^{∞})	91
40	■ Definition (Cotangent Spaces and Cotangent Vectors)	92
41	■ Definition (1-Form on the Cotangent Bundle)	92
42	Definition (Smooth 1-Forms)	93
43	\blacksquare Definition (Exterior Derivative of f (1-form))	97
44	\blacksquare Definition (Space of k -Forms on \mathbb{R}^n)	100
45	\blacksquare Definition (k -Forms at p)	100
46	\blacksquare Definition (k -Form on \mathbb{R}^n)	101
47	$\blacksquare \text{ Definition (Smooth } k\text{-Forms on } \mathbb{R}^n) \qquad \dots \qquad \dots \qquad \dots$	102
48	■ Definition (Wedge Product of <i>k</i> -Forms)	
49	\blacksquare Definition (Pullback by F of a k -Form)	107
50	■ Definition (Pullback of 0-forms)	111
51	■ Definition (Wedge Product of a 0-form and <i>k</i> -form)	112
52	■ Definition (Exterior Derivative)	119
53	■ Definition (Closed and Exact Forms)	120
54	Definition (Immersion)	125
55	■ Definition (parameterizations and parameterized Submanifolds)	126
56	■ Definition (j th Coordinate Curve)	128

8 LIST OF DEFINITIONS - LIST OF DEFINITIONS

57	■ Definition (Tangent Space on a Submanifold)	128
58	E Definition (Submanifolds)	129
59	■ Definition (Transition Map)	131
60	E Definition (Local parameterizations)	133
61	■ Definition (Maximal Rank)	137
62	E Definition (Level Set)	137
63	■ Definition (Smooth Functions on Submanifolds)	145
64	E Definition (Smooth Curve on a Submanifold)	146
65	■ Definition (Velocity Vectors on a Submanifold)	150
66	■ Definition (Derivation on Submanifolds)	153
67	■ Definition (Cotangent Space on a Submanifold)	161
68	☐ Definition (Vector Fields on Submanifold)	162
69	☐ Definition (Forms on Submanifolds)	162
70	■ Definition (Wedge Product on Submanifolds)	163
71	E Definition (Smooth Vector Fields on Submanifolds)	163
72	E Definition (Smooth 0-forms on Submanifolds)	163
73	\blacksquare Definition (Smooth r -forms on Submanifolds)	163
74	■ Definition (Pullback Maps on Submanifolds)	165
7 5	■ Definition (Exterior Derivative on Submanifolds)	169
76	■ Definition (Orientable Submanifolds)	172
77	E Definition (Compatible Orientation)	173
78	■ Definition (Support of a Function)	188
79	■ Definition (Integration of Forms on Euclidean Space)	194
80	E Definition (Integral over Manifolds with a Single Parameterization)	195
81	■ Definition (Integral over Manifolds)	198
82	☐ Definition (Half Space)	199
83	■ Definition (Boundary of the Half Space)	200
84	■ Definition (Open Subset in a Half Space)	200
85	■ Definition (Interior point in the Half Space)	201
86	■ Definition (Boundary point in the Half Space)	201
87	■ Definition (Smooth functions in the Half Space)	201

PMATH365 — Differential Geometry 9

88	Definition (Submanifold with Boundary)	202
89	■ Definition (Boundary Point on a Submanifold)	
90	■ Definition (Boundary of a Submanifold)	
	Definition (Kernel and Image)	
	■ Definition (Rank and Nullity)	

List of Theorems

1	♦ Proposition (Dual Basis)	25
2	♦ Proposition (Natural Pairings are Nondegenerate)	27
3	♦ Proposition (The Space and Its Double Dual Space)	28
4	♦ Proposition (Isomorphism Between The Space and Its Dual Space)	28
5	♦ Proposition (Identity and Composition of the Dual Map)	3
6	• Proposition (A <i>k</i> -form is equivalently 0 if its arguments are linearly dependent)	37
7	► Corollary (k-forms of even higher dimensions)	38
8	♦ Proposition (Permutation on <i>k</i> -forms)	40
9	♦ Proposition (Alternate Definition of a Decomposable <i>k</i> -form)	4
10	\blacksquare Theorem (Basis of $\Lambda^k(V^*)$)	4
11	$ ightharpoonup$ Corollary (Dimension of $\Lambda^k(V^*)$)	4
12	Corollary (Linearly Dependent 1-forms)	47
13	♦ Proposition (Properties of the Pullback)	49
14	♦ Proposition (Structure of the Determinant of a Linear Map of <i>k</i> -forms)	57
15	Corollary (Nonvanishing Minor)	58
16	♦ Proposition (Inverse of a Continuous Map is Open)	64
17	• Proposition (Differential of the Identity Map is the Identity Matrix)	66
18	■ Theorem (The Chain Rule)	67
19	♦ Proposition (Equivalent Curves as an Equivalence Relation)	79
20	\leftrightarrow Proposition (Canonical Bijection from $T_p(\mathbb{R}^n)$ to \mathbb{R}^n)	71
21	■Theorem (Linearity and Leibniz Rule for Directional Derivatives)	76
22	■ Theorem (Canonical Directional Derivative, Free From the Curve)	77
23	$ ightharpoonup$ Corollary (Justification for the Notation $v_p f$)	77
24	$lacktriangle$ Proposition (\sim_p for Smooth Functions is an Equivalence Relation)	78

25	• Proposition (Linearity of the Directional Derivative over the Germs of Functions)	80
26	♦ Proposition (Set of Derivations as a Space)	81
27	Lemma (Derivations Annihilates Constant Functions)	83
28	■ Theorem (Derivations are Tangent Vectors)	84
29	♦ Proposition (Equivalent Definition of a Smooth Vector Field)	89
30	♦ Proposition (Equivalent Definition for Smoothness of 1-Forms)	93
31	♦ Proposition (Exterior Derivative as the Jacobian)	98
32	♦ Proposition (Equivalent Definition of Smothness of <i>k</i> -Forms)	102
33	♦ Proposition (Pullbacks Preserve Smoothness)	107
34	♦ Proposition (Different Linearities of The Pullback)	108
35	Lemma (Linearity of the Pullback over the 0-form that is a Scalar)	111
36	Corollary (General Linearity of the Pullback)	112
37	♦ Proposition (Explicit Formula for the Pullback of Smooth 1-forms)	114
38	Corollary (Commutativity of the Pullback and the Exterior Derivative on Smooth 0-forms)	114
39	■ Theorem (Defining Properties of the Exterior Derivative)	117
40	♦ Proposition (Commutativity of the Pullback and the Exterior Derivative)	121
41	♣ Lemma (parameterized Submanifolds are not Determined by Immersions)	127
42	♦ Proposition (Transition Maps are Diffeomorphisms)	132
43	■ Theorem (Implicit Submanifold Theorem)	138
44	■ Theorem (Points on the parameterization)	141
45	♦ Proposition (Local Version of the Implicit Submanifold Theorem)	143
46	• Proposition (Converse of the Local Version of the Implicit Submanifold Theorem)	144
47	igl Proposition (Smooth Curves on a Submanifold is a Smooth Curve on \mathbb{R}^n)	146
48	♦ Proposition (Composing a Smooth Function and a Smooth Curve)	147
49	♦ Proposition (Well-Definedness of the Tangent Space of a Submanifold)	149
50	♦ Proposition (All Velocity Vectors on a Submanifold are Determined by ■ Definition 65) .	151
51	Lemma (Correspondence of Smooth Maps between a Submanifold and Its parameterization	1)155
52	Corollary (Isomorphism Between Algebra of Germs)	156
53	■ Theorem (Derivations are Tangent Vectors Even on Submanifolds)	159

12 LIST OF THEOREMS - LIST OF THEOREMS

54	• Proposition (Structures of $\Gamma(TM)$ and $\Omega^r(M)$)	164
55	♦ Proposition (Smoothness of Wedge Products on Submanifolds)	165
56	♣ Lemma (Smoothness of Pullbacks and Forms)	167
57	Lemma (Composition of Pullbacks of Transition Maps and parameterizations)	168
58	Corollary (<i>r</i> -forms on a Submanifold and Its parameterizations are Equivalent)	168
59	♦ Proposition (Square of the exterior derivative is a zero map on submanifolds)	170
60	♦ Proposition (Compatibility of Parameterizations with the Orientation)	173
61	♦ Proposition (Non-orientability Checker)	177
62	\$ Lemma (Smooth Bump Functions)	186
63	♣ Lemma (Special Parameterizations to Construct Partitions of Unity)	187
64	■ Theorem (Partition of Unity)	189
65	♦ Proposition (Compatible Local Parameterizations Implies Orientability)	193
66	Corollary (Well-Definedness of the Integral over Manifolds with a Single Parameterization)	196
67	♦ Proposition (Independence of the Integral from the Choice of Parameterization and Partition	n
	of Unity)	198
68	■ Theorem (Stokes' Theorem (First Version))	199
69	Lemma (Characterization of Open Sets in a Half Space)	200
70	♦ Proposition (Well-definedness of the Boundary of a Manifold)	204
71	♦ Proposition (Dimension of the Boundary of a Submanifold)	205
72	Corollary	221
A.1	■Theorem (Rank-Nullity Theorem)	224
A.2	♦ Proposition (Nullity of Only 0 and Injectivity)	224
A.3	♦ Proposition (When Rank Equals The Dimension of the Space)	225
A.4	■ Theorem (Inverse Function Theorem)	225
A.5	■ Theorem (Implicit Function Theorem)	226

List of Procedures



This course is a post-requisite of MATH 235/245 (Linear Algebra II) and AMATH 231 (Calculus IV) or MATH 247 (Advanced Calculus III). In other words, familiarity with vector spaces and calculus is expected.

The course is spiritually separated into two parts. The first part shall be called Exterior Differential Calculus, which allows for a natural, metric-independent generalization of Stokes' Theorem, Gauss's Theorem, and Green's Theorem. Our end goal of this part is to arrive at Stokes' Theorem, that renders the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus as a special case of the theorem.

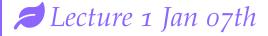
The second part of the course shall be called in the name of the course: **Differential Geometry**. This part is dedicated to studying geometry using techniques from differential calculus, integral calculus, linear algebra, and multilinear algebra.

To the learner You will likely want to avoid using this as your main text going forward. There is little to no intuition introduced in this course, coupled with seemingly haphazard organization of topics, incredibly cryptic definitions and theorems, along with little examples to reinforce your learning. The lectures and lecture notes are more likely aimed at those with relatively strong background in the topic, not for those who are coming into the field for the first time.

Also, as this is written down right now, we are on the last week of classes and we have yet to even see the entrance to Differential Geometry, which is the name of the course. At this point, the course may as well be renamed Exterior Calculus.

Part I

Exterior Differential Calculus



1.1 Linear Algebra Review

■ Definition 1 (Linear Map)

Let V, W be finite dimensional real vector spaces. A map $T:V\to W$ is called *linear* if $\forall a,b\in\mathbb{R},\,\forall v\in V$ and $\forall w\in W$,

$$T(av + bw) = aT(v) + bT(w).$$

We define L(U, W) to be the set of all linear maps from V to W.

66 Note 1.1.1

- Note that L(U, W) is itself a finite dimensional real vector space.
- The structure of the vector space L(V,W) is such that $\forall T,S \in L(V,W)$, and $\forall a,b \in \mathbb{R}$, we have

$$aT + bS : V \rightarrow W$$

and

$$(aT + bS)(v) = aT(v) + bS(v).$$

• A special case: when W = V, we usually write

$$L(V, W) = L(V),$$

and we call this the space of linear operators on V.

Now suppose $\dim(V) = n$ for some $n \in \mathbb{N}$. This means that there exists a basis $\{e_1, \ldots, e_n\}$ of V with n elements.

Definition 2 (Basis)

A basis $\mathcal{B} = \{e_1, \dots, e_n\}$ of an n-dimensional vector space V is a subset of V where

1. \mathcal{B} spans V, i.e. $\forall v \in V$

$$v = \sum_{i=1}^{n} v^{i} e_{i}.$$

2. e_1, \ldots, e_n are linearly independent, i.e.

$$v^i e_i = 0 \implies v^i = 0$$
 for every i.

 $^{\mathrm{I}}$ We shall use a different convention when we write a linear combination. In particular, we use v^{i} to represent the i^{th} coefficient of the linear combination instead of v_{i} . Note that this should not be confused with taking powers, and should be clear from the context of the discussion.

66 Note 1.1.2

We shall abusively write

$$v^i e_i = \sum_i v^i e_i.$$

Again, this should be clear from the context of the discussion.

The two conditions that define a basis implies that any $v \in V$ can be expressed as $v^i e_i$, where $v^i \in \mathbb{R}$.

■ Definition 3 (Coordinate Vector)

The n-tuple $(v^1, ..., v^n) \in \mathbb{R}^n$ is called the **coordinate vector** $[v]_{\mathcal{B}} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ of v with respect to the basis $\mathcal{B} = \{e_1, ..., e_n\}$.

66 Note 1.1.3

It is clear that the coordinate vector $[v]_{\mathcal{B}}$ is dependent on the basis \mathcal{B} . Note that we shall also assume that the basis is "ordered", which is somewhat important since the same basis (set-wise) with a different "ordering" may give us a completely different coordinate vector.

Example 1.1.1

Let $V = \mathbb{R}^n$, and $\hat{e}_i = (0, \dots, 0, 1, 0, \dots, 0)$, where 1 is the i^{th} compoenent of \hat{e}_1 . Then

$$\mathcal{B}_{std} = \{\hat{e}_1, \dots, \hat{e}_n\}$$

is called the **standard basis** of \mathbb{R}^n .



66 Note 1.1.4

Let $v = (v^1, \ldots, v^n) \in \mathbb{R}^n$. Then

$$v = v^1 \hat{e}_1 + \dots v^n \hat{e}_n.$$

So
$$\mathbb{R}^n \ni [v]_{\mathcal{B}_{\mathrm{std}}} = v \in V = \mathbb{R}^n$$
.

This is a privilege enjoyed by the n-dimensional vector space \mathbb{R}^n .

Now if we choose a non-standard basis of \mathbb{R}^n , say $\tilde{\mathcal{B}}$, then $[v]_{\tilde{\mathcal{B}}} \neq$ v.

66 Note 1.1.5

It does not make sense to ask if a standard basis exists for an arbitrary space, as we have seen above. A geometrical way of wrestling with this notion is as follows:

While the subspace is embedding in a vector space of which has a standard basis, we cannot establish a "standard" basis for this 2-dimensional subspace. In laymen terms, we cannot tell which direction is up or down, positive or negative for the subspace, without making assumptions.

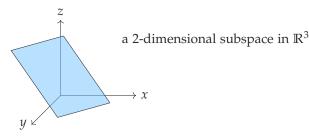


Figure 1.1: An arbitrary 2-dimensional subspace in a 3-dimensional space

However, since we are still in a finite-dimensional vector space, we can still make a connection to a Euclidean space of the same dimension.

■ Definition 4 (Linear Isomorphism)

Let V be n-dimensional, and $\mathcal{B} = \{e_1, \dots, e_n\}$ be some basis of V. The map

$$v = v^i e_i \mapsto [v]_{\mathcal{B}}$$

from V to \mathbb{R}^n is a linear isomorphism of vector spaces.

Exercise 1.1.1

Prove that the said linear isomorphism is indeed linear and bijective².

² i.e. we are right in calling it linear and being an isomorphism

66 Note 1.1.6

Any n-dimensional real vecotr space is isomorphic to \mathbb{R}^n , but not canonically so, as it requires the knowledge of the basis that is arbitrarily chosen. In other words, a different set of basis would give us a different isomorphism.

1.2 Orientation

Consider an n-dimensional vector space V. Recall that for any linear operator $T \in L(V)$, we may associate a real number det(T), called the

determinant of *T*, such that *T* is said to be **invertible** iff $det(T) \neq 0$.

■ Definition 5 (Same and Opposite Orientations)

Let

$$\mathcal{B} = \{e_1, \dots, e_n\}$$
 and $\tilde{\mathcal{B}} = \{\tilde{e}_1, \dots, \tilde{e}_n\}$

be two ordered bases of V. Let $T \in L(V)$ be the linear operator defined by

$$T(e_i) = \tilde{e}_i$$

for each i = 1, 2, ..., n. This mapping is clearly invertible, and so $det(T) \neq 0$, and T^{-1} is also linear, such that $T^{-1}(\tilde{e}_i) = e_i$, for each i.

We say that \mathcal{B} and $\tilde{\mathcal{B}}$ determine the same orientation if det(T) > 0, and we say that they determine the opposite orientations if det(T) <0.

66 Note 1.2.1

- This notion of orientation only works in real vector spaces, as, for instance, in a complex vector space, there is no sense of "positivity" or "negativity".
- Whenever we talk about same and opposite orientation(s), we are usually talking about 2 sets of bases. It makes sense to make a comparison to the standard basis in a Euclidean space, and determine that the compared (non-)standard basis is "positive" (same direction) or "negative" (opposite), but, again, in an arbitrary space, we do not have this convenience.

Exercise 1.2.1 (A1Q1)

Show that any n-dimensional real vector space V admits exactly 2 orientations.

Example 1.2.1

On \mathbb{R}^n , consider the standard basis

$$\mathcal{B}_{\text{std}} = \{\hat{e}_1, \dots, \hat{e}_n\}.$$

The orientation determined by \mathcal{B}_{std} is called the **standard orientation** of \mathbb{R}^n .

1.3 Dual Space

E Definition 6 (Dual Space)

Let V be an n-dimensional vector space. Then \mathbb{R} is a 1-dimensional real vector space. Thus we have that $L(V,\mathbb{R})$ is also a real vector space 3 . The dual space V^* of V is defined to be

$$V^* := L(V, \mathbb{R}).$$

mensional since both the domain and codomain are finite dimensional.

³ Note that $L(V, \mathbb{R})$ is also finite di-

Let \mathcal{B} be a basis of V. For all i = 1, 2, ..., n, let $e^i \in V^*$ such that

$$e^{i}(e_{j}) = \delta^{i}_{j} = \begin{cases} 1 & i = j \\ 0 & i \neq j \end{cases}.$$

This δ_i^i is known as the Kronecker Delta.

In general, we have that for every $v = v^j e_j \in V$, where $v^i \in \mathbb{R}$, by the linearity of e^i , we have

$$e^{i}(v) = e^{i}(v^{j}e_{j}) = v^{j}e^{i}(e_{j}) = v_{j}\delta_{j}^{i} = v^{i}.$$

So each of the e^i , when applied on v, gives us the i^{th} component of $[v]_{\mathcal{B}}$, where \mathcal{B} is a basis of V, in particular

$$v = v^{i}e_{i}$$
, where $v^{i} = e^{i}(v)$. (1.1)

2.1 Dual Space (Continued)

♦ Proposition 1 (Dual Basis)

The set

$$\mathcal{B}^* := \left\{ e^1, \dots, e^n \right\}$$

¹ is a basis of V^* , and is called the **dual basis** of \mathcal{B} , where \mathcal{B} is a basis of V. In particular, dim $V^* = n = \dim V$.

 $^{\scriptscriptstyle \rm I}$ Note that the e^{i} 's are defined as in the last part of the last lecture.

Proof

 \mathcal{B}^* spans V^* Let $\alpha \in V^*$. Let $v = v^j e_j \in V$, where we note that

$$\mathcal{B} = \{e_i\}_{i=1}^n.$$

We have that

$$\alpha(v) = \alpha(v^j e_j) = v^j \alpha(e_j).$$

Now for all j = 1, 2, ..., n, define $\alpha_j = \alpha(e_j)$. Then

$$\alpha(v) = \alpha_j v^j = \alpha_j e^j(v),$$

which holds for all $v \in V$. This implies that $\alpha = \alpha_j e^j$, and so \mathcal{B}^* spans V^* .

 \mathcal{B}^* is linearly independent Suppose $\alpha_j e^j = 0 \in V^*$. Applying $\alpha_j e^j$

to each of the vectors e_k in \mathcal{B} , we have

$$\alpha_j e^j(e_k) = 0(e_k) = 0 \in \mathbb{R}$$

and

$$\alpha_j e^j(e_k) = \alpha_j \delta_k^j = \alpha_k.$$

By A1Q2, we have that $a_k = 0$ for all k = 1, 2, ..., n, and so \mathcal{B}^* is linearly independent.

Remark 2.1.1

Let $\mathcal{B} = \{e_1, \dots, e_n\}$ be a basis of V, with dual space $\mathcal{B}^* = \{e^1, \dots, e^n\}$. Then the map $T: V \to V^*$ such that

$$T(e_i) = e^i$$

is a vector space isomorphism. And so we have that $V \simeq V^*$, but not cannonically so since we needed to know what the basis is in the first place.

We will see later that if we impose an **inner product** on V, then it will induce a canonical isomorphism from V to V^* .

■ Definition 7 (Natural Pairing)

The function

$$\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle : V^* \times V \to \mathbb{R}$$

given by

$$\langle \alpha, v \rangle \mapsto \alpha(v)$$

is called a *natural pairing* of V^* and V.

66 Note 2.1.1

A natural pairing is bilinear, i.e. it is linear in α and linear in v, which means that

$$\langle \alpha, t_1 v_1 + t_2 v_2 \rangle = t_1 \langle \alpha, v_1 \rangle + t_2 \langle \alpha, v_2 \rangle$$

and

$$\langle t_1 \alpha_1 + t_2 \alpha_2, v \rangle = t_1 \langle \alpha_1, v \rangle + t_2 \langle \alpha_2, v \rangle,$$

respectively.

♦ Proposition 2 (Natural Pairings are Nondegenerate)

For a finite dimensional real vector space V, a natural pairing is said to be nondegenerate if

This is A1Q2.

$$\forall v \in V \ \langle \alpha, v \rangle = 0 \iff \alpha = 0$$

and

$$\forall \alpha \in V^* \ \langle \alpha, v \rangle = 0 \iff v = 0.$$

Example 2.1.1

Fix a basis $\mathcal{B} = \{e_1, \dots, e_n\}$ of V. Given $T \in L(V)$, there is an associated $n \times n$ matrix $A = [T]_{\mathcal{B}}$ defined by

$$T(e_i) = A_i^j e_j$$
.

Tow index

In particular,

$$A = \overbrace{\left[[T(e_1)]_{\mathcal{B}} \quad \dots \quad [T(e_n)]_{\mathcal{B}} \right]}^{\text{block matrix}}$$

and

$$A_i^k = e^k(T(e_i)) = \langle e^k, T(e_i) \rangle.$$

■ Definition 8 (Double Dual Space)

The set

$$V^{**} = L(V^*, \mathbb{R})$$

is called the double dual space.

♦ Proposition 3 (The Space and Its Double Dual Space)

Let V be a finite dimensional real vector space and V^{**} be its double dual space. There exists a linear map ξ such that

$$\xi: V \to V^{**}$$

Proof

Let $v \in V$. Then $\xi(v) \in V^{**} = L(V^*, \mathbb{R})$, i.e. $\xi(v) : V^* \to \mathbb{R}$. Then for any $\alpha \in V^*$,

$$(\xi(v))(\alpha) \in \mathbb{R}$$
.

Since $\alpha \in V^*$, i.e. $\alpha : V \to \mathbb{R}$, and α is linear, let us define

$$\xi(v)(\alpha) = \alpha(v).$$

To verify that $\xi(v)$ is indeed linear, notice that for any $t,s \in \mathbb{R}$, and for any $\alpha,\beta \in V^*$, we have

$$\xi(v)(t\alpha + s\beta) = (t\alpha + s\beta)(v)$$
$$= t\alpha(v) + s\beta(v)$$
$$= t\xi(v)(\alpha) + s\xi(v)(\beta).$$

It remains to show that ξ itself is linear: for any $t,s \in \mathbb{R}$, any $v,w \in V$, and any $\alpha \in V^*$, we have

$$\xi(tv + sw)(\alpha) = \alpha(tv + sw) = t\alpha(v) + s\alpha(w)$$
$$= t\xi(v)(\alpha) + s\xi(v)(\alpha)$$
$$= [t\xi(v) + s\xi(w)](\alpha)$$

by addition of functions.

As messy as this may seem, this is really a follow your nose kind of proof. Since we are proving that a map exists, we need to construct it. Since $\xi:V\to V^{**}=L(V^*,\mathbb{R}), \text{ for any }v\in V,$ we must have $\xi(v)$ as some linear map from V^* to \mathbb{R} .

♦ Proposition 4 (Isomorphism Between The Space and Its Dual Space)

The linear map in **\langle** Proposition 3 is an isomorphism.

From $\begin{cases} \bullet Proposition 3, ξ is linear. Let $v \in V$ such that $\xi(v) = 0$, i.e. $v \in \ker(\xi)$. Then by the same definition of ξ as above, we have$

$$0 = (\xi(v))(\alpha) = \alpha(v)$$

for any $\alpha \in V^*$. By \P Proposition 2, we must have that v = 0, i.e. $\ker(\xi) = \{0\}$. Thus by \P Proposition A.2, ξ is injective.

Now, since

$$V^{**} = L(V^*, \mathbb{R}) = L(L(V, \mathbb{R}), \mathbb{R}),$$

we have that

$$\dim(V^{**}) = \dim(V^*) = \dim(V).$$

Thus, by the Rank-Nullity Theorem 2 , we have that ξ is surjective.

² See Appendix A.1, and especially ♠ Proposition A.3.

The above two proposition shows to use that we may identify V with V^{**} using ξ , and we can gleefully assume that $V = V^{**}$.

Consequently, if $v \in V = V^{**}$ and $\alpha \in V^*$, we have

$$\alpha(v) = v(\alpha) = \langle \alpha, v \rangle. \tag{2.1}$$

2.2 Dual Map

E Definition 9 (Dual Map)

Let $T \in L(V, W)$, where V, W are finite dimensional real vector spaces. Let

$$T^*: W^* \to V^*$$

be defined as follows: for $\beta \in W^*$, we have $T^*(\beta) \in V^*$. Let $v \in V$, and so $(T^*(\beta))(v) \in \mathbb{R}^3$. From here, we may define

$$(T^*(\beta))(v) = \beta(T(v)).$$

³ It shall be verified here that $T^*(\beta)$ is indeed linear: let $v_1, v_2 \in V$ and $c_1, c_2 \in \mathbb{R}$. Indeed

$$T^*(\beta)(c_1v_1 + c_2v_2)$$

= $c_1T^*(\beta)(v_1) + c_2T^*(\beta)(v_2)$

The map T^* is called **the dual map**.

Exercise 2.2.1

Prove that $T^* \in L(W^*, V^*)$, i.e. that T^* is linear.

Proof

Let $\beta_1, \beta_2 \in W^*$, $t_1, t_2 \in \mathbb{R}$, and $v \in V$. Then

$$T^{*}(t_{1}\beta_{1} + t_{2}\beta_{2})(v) = (t_{1}\beta_{1} + t_{2}\beta_{2})(Tv)$$

$$= t_{1}\beta_{1}(Tv) + t_{2}\beta_{2}(Tv)$$

$$= t_{1}T^{*}(\beta_{1})(v) + t_{2}T^{*}(\beta_{2})(v).$$

66 Note 2.2.1

Note that in \blacksquare Definition 9, our construction of T^* is canonical, i.e. its construction is independent of the choice of a basis.

Also, notice that in the language of pairings, we have

$$\langle T^*\beta, v \rangle = (T^*(\beta))(v) = \beta(T(v)) = \langle \beta, T(v) \rangle,$$

where we note that

$$T^*(\beta) \in V^* \quad v \in V$$

 $\beta \in W^* \quad T(v) \in W.$

3.1 Dual Map (Continued)

66 Note 3.1.1

Elements in V^* are also called co-vectors.

Recall from last lecture that if $T \in L(V, W)$, then it induces a dual map $T^* \in L(W^*, V^*)$ such that

$$(T^*\beta)(v) = \beta(T(v)).$$

♦ Proposition 5 (Identity and Composition of the Dual Map)

Let V and W be finite dimensional real vector spaces.

1. Suppose V = W and $T = I_V \in L(V)$, then

$$(I_V)^* = I_{V^*} \in L(V^*).$$

2. Let $T \in L(V, W)$, $S \in L(W, U)$. Then $S \circ T \in L(V, U)$. Moreover,

$$L(U^*, V^*) \ni (S \circ T)^* = T^* \circ S^*.$$

Proof

1. Observe that for any $\beta \in V^*$, and any $v \in V$, we have

$$((I_V)^*(\beta))(v) = \beta((I_V)(v)) = \beta(v).$$

Therefore $(I_V)^* = I_{V^*}$.

2. Observe that for $\gamma \in U^*$ and $v \in V$, we have

$$((S \circ T)^*(\gamma))(v) = \gamma((S \circ T)(v))$$
$$= \gamma(S(T(v)))$$
$$= S^*(\gamma T(v))$$
$$= (T^* \circ S^*)(\gamma)(v),$$

and so $(S \circ T)^* = T^* \circ S^*$ as required.

Let $T \in L(V)$, and the dual map $T^* \in L(V^*)$. Let \mathcal{B} be a basis of V, with the dual basis \mathcal{B}^* . We may write

$$A = [T]_{\mathcal{B}}$$
 and $A^* = [T^*]_{\mathcal{B}^*}$.

Note that

$$T(e_i) = A_i^j e_i$$
 and $T^*(e^i) = (A^*)_i^i e^j$.

Consequently, we have

$$\langle e^k, T(e_i) \rangle = A_i^k \text{ and } \langle T^*(e^i), e_k \rangle = (A^*)_k^i.$$

From here, notice that by applying $e_k \in V = V^{**}$ to both sides, we have

$$(A^*)^i_k = e_k(T^*(e^i)) = \langle T^*(e^i), e_k \rangle \stackrel{(*)}{=} \langle e^i, T(e_k) \rangle = A^i_k.$$

Thus A^* is the transpose of A, and

$$[T^*]_{\mathcal{B}^*} = [T]_{\mathcal{B}}^t \tag{3.1}$$

where M^t is the transpose of the matrix M.

Application to Orientations

Let \mathcal{B} be a basis of V. Then \mathcal{B} determines an orientation of V. Let \mathcal{B}^* be the dual basis of V^* . So \mathcal{B}^* determines an orientation for V^* .

Example 3.1.1

Suppose \mathcal{B} and $\tilde{\mathcal{B}}$ determines the same orientation of V. Does it follow that the dual bases \mathcal{B}^* and $\tilde{\mathcal{B}}^*$ determine the same orientation of V^* ?

Proof

Let

$$\mathcal{B} = \{e_1, \dots, e_n\}$$

$$\mathcal{\tilde{B}} = \{\tilde{e}_1, \dots, \tilde{e}_n\}$$

$$\mathcal{\tilde{B}}^* = \{\tilde{e}^1, \dots, \tilde{e}^n\}$$

$$\mathcal{\tilde{B}}^* = \{\tilde{e}^1, \dots, \tilde{e}^n\}$$

Let $T \in L(V)$ such that $T(e_i) = \tilde{e}_i$. By assumption, det T > 0. Notice that

$$\delta_j^i = \tilde{e}^i(\tilde{e}_j) = \tilde{e}^i(Te_j) = (T^*(\tilde{e}^i))(e_j),$$

and so we must have $T^*(\tilde{e}^i) = e^i$. By Equation (3.1), we have that

$$\det T^* = \det T > 0$$

as well. This shows that \mathcal{B}^* and $\tilde{\mathcal{B}}^*$ determines the same orientation.

3.2 The Space of k-forms on V

Definition 10 (*k*-Form)

Let V be an ndimensional vector space. Let $k \geq 1$. A k-form on V is a тар

$$\alpha: \underbrace{V \times V \times \ldots \times V}_{k \text{ times}} \to \mathbb{R}$$

such that

1. (*k*-linearity / multi-linearity) if we fix all but one of the arguments of α , then it is a linear map from V to \mathbb{R} ; i.e. if we fix

$$v_1,\ldots,v_{j-1},v_{j+1},\ldots,v_k\in V$$
,

then the map

$$u \mapsto \alpha(v_1, \ldots, v_{i-1}, u, v_{i+1}, \ldots, v_k)$$

is linear in u.

2. (alternating property) α is alternating (aka totally skewed-symmetric) in its k arguments; i.e.

$$\alpha(v_1,\ldots,v_i,\ldots,v_i,\ldots,v_k)=\alpha(v_1,\ldots,v_i,\ldots,v_i,\ldots,v_k).$$

Example 3.2.1

The following is an example of the second condition: if k=2, then $\alpha: V \times V \to \mathbb{R}$. Then $\alpha(v,w) = -\alpha(w,v)$.

If k = 3, then $\alpha : V \times V \times V \to \mathbb{R}$. Then we have

$$\alpha(u,v,w) = -\alpha(v,u,w) = -\alpha(w,v,u) = -\alpha(u,w,v)$$
$$= \alpha(v,w,u) = \alpha(w,u,v).$$

66 Note 3.2.1

Note that if k = 1, then condition 2 is vacuous. Therefore, a 1-form of V is just an element of $V^* = L(W, \mathbb{R})$.

Remark 3.2.1 (Permutations)

From the last example, we notice that the 'sign' of the value changes as we permute more times. To be precise, we are performing **transpositions** on the arguments ¹, i.e. we only swap two of the arguments in a single move. Here are several remarks about permutations from group theory:

¹ See PMATH 347.

- A permutation σ of $\{1, 2, ..., k\}$ is a bijective map.
- Compositions of permutations results in a permutation.
- The set S_k of permutations on the set $\{1, 2, ..., k\}$ is called a group.
- *There are k! such permutations.*
- For each transposition, we may assign a parity of either -1 or 1, and the parity is determined by the number of times we need to perform a transposition to get from (1, 2, ..., k) to $(\sigma(1), \sigma(2), ..., \sigma(k))$. We usually denote a parity by $sgn(\sigma)$.

The following is a fact proven in group theory: let $\sigma, \tau \in S_k$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname{sgn}(\sigma \circ \tau) &= \operatorname{sgn}(\sigma) \cdot \operatorname{sgn}(\tau) \\ \operatorname{sgn}(\operatorname{id}) &= 1 \\ \operatorname{sgn}(\tau) &= \operatorname{sgn}(\tau^{-1}). \end{aligned}$$

Using the above remark, we can rewrite condition 2 as follows:

66 Note 3.2.2 (Rewrite of condition 2 for 🗏 Definition 10)

 α is alternating, i.e.

$$\alpha(v_{\sigma(1)},\ldots,v_{\sigma(k)}) = \operatorname{sgn}(\sigma) \cdot \alpha(v_1,\ldots,v_k),$$

where $\sigma \in S_k$.

Remark 3.2.2

If α is a k-form on V, notice that

$$\alpha(v_1,\ldots,v_k)=0$$

if any 2 of the arguments are equal.

Lecture 4 Jan 14th

4.1 The Space of k-forms on V (Continued)

\blacksquare Definition 11 (Space of k-forms on V)

The space of k-forms on V, denoted as $\Lambda^k(V^*)$, is the set of all k-forms on V, made into a vector space by setting

$$(t\alpha + s\beta)(v_1, \ldots, v_k) := t\alpha(v_1, \ldots, v_k) + s\beta(v_1, \ldots, v_k),$$

for $\alpha\beta\in\Lambda^{k}\left(V^{*}\right)$, $t,s\in\mathbb{R}$.

66 Note 4.1.1

By convention, we define $\Lambda^{0}\left(V^{*}\right)=\mathbb{R}.$ The reasoning shall we shown later.

66 Note 4.1.2

By the note on page 34, observe that $\wedge^1(V^*) = V^*$.

♦ Proposition 6 (A *k*-form is equivalently 0 if its arguments are linearly dependent)

Let α be a k-form. Then if v_1, \ldots, v_k are linearly dependent, then

$$\alpha(v_1,\ldots,v_k)=0.$$

Proof

Suppose one of the v_1, \ldots, v_k is a linear combination of the rest of the other vectors; i.e.

$$v_i = c_1 v_1 + \ldots + c_{i-1} v_{i-1} + c_{i+1} v_{i+1} + \ldots + c_k v_k.$$

Then since α is multilinear, and by the last remark in Chapter 3, we have

$$\alpha(v_1,\ldots,v_{j-1},v_j,v_{j+1},\ldots,v_k)=0.$$

Corollary 7 (*k*-forms of even higher dimensions)

$$\Lambda^{k}(V^{*}) = \{0\} \text{ if } k > n = \dim V.$$

Proof

Any set of k > n vectors is necessarily linearly dependent.

66 Note 4.1.3

Corollary 7 implies that $\Lambda^k(V^*)$ can only be non-trivial for $0 \le k \le n = \dim V$.

4.2 Decomposable k-forms

There is a simple way to construct a k-form on V using k-many 1-forms from V, i.e. k-many elements from V^* . Let $\alpha^1, \ldots, \alpha^k \in V^*$.

Define a map

$$\alpha^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge \alpha^k : \underbrace{V \times V \times \ldots \times V}_{k \text{ copies}} \to \mathbb{R}$$

by

$$\left(\alpha^{1} \wedge \ldots \wedge \alpha^{k}\right)(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{k}) := \sum_{\sigma \in S_{k}} (\operatorname{sgn} \sigma) \alpha^{\sigma(1)}(v_{1}) \alpha^{\sigma(2)}(v_{2}) \ldots \alpha^{\sigma(k)}(v_{k}).$$

$$(4.1)$$

We need, of course, to verify that the above formula is, indeed, a *k*-form. Before that, consider the following example:

Example 4.2.1

If k = 2, we have

$$(\alpha^1 \wedge \alpha^2)(v_1, v_2) = \alpha^1(v_1)\alpha^2(v_2) - \alpha^2(v_1)\alpha^1(v_2).$$

and if k = 3, we have

$$\begin{split} \left(\alpha^1 \wedge \alpha^2 \wedge \alpha^3\right)(v_1, v_2, v_3) &= \alpha^1(v_1)\alpha^2(v_2)\alpha^3(v_3) + \alpha^2(v_1)\alpha^3(v_2)\alpha^1(v_1) \\ &+ \alpha^3(v_1)\alpha^1(v_2)\alpha^2(v_3) - \alpha^1(v_1)\alpha^3(v_2)\alpha^2(v_3) \\ &- \alpha^2(v_1)\alpha^1(v_1)\alpha^3(v_3) - \alpha^3(v_1)\alpha^2(v_2)\alpha^2(v_3). \end{split}$$

Now consider a general case of k. It is clear that Equation (4.1) is k-linear: if we fix any one of the arguments, then Equation (4.1) is reduced to a linear equation.

For the alternating property, let $\tau \in S_k$. WTS

$$\left(\alpha^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge \alpha^k\right) \left(v_{\tau(1)}, \ldots, v_{\tau(k)}\right) = (\operatorname{sgn} \tau) \left(\alpha^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge \alpha^k\right) \left(v_1, \ldots, v_k\right).$$

Observe that

$$\begin{split} &\left(\alpha^{1}\wedge\ldots\wedge\alpha^{k}\right)\left(v_{\tau(1)},\ldots,v_{\tau(k)}\right) \\ &= \sum_{\sigma\in S_{k}}\left(\operatorname{sgn}\sigma\right)\alpha^{\sigma(1)}\left(v_{\tau(1)}\right)\ldots\alpha^{\sigma(k)}\left(v_{\tau(k)}\right) \\ &= \sum_{\sigma\in S_{k}}\left(\operatorname{sgn}\sigma\circ\tau^{-1}\right)\left(\operatorname{sgn}\tau\right)\alpha^{\left(\sigma\circ\tau^{-1}\right)\left(\tau(1)\right)}\left(v_{\tau(1)}\right)\ldots\alpha^{\left(\sigma\circ\tau^{-1}\right)\left(\tau(k)\right)}\left(v_{\tau(k)}\right) \\ &= \left(\operatorname{sgn}\tau\right)\sum_{\sigma\circ\tau^{-1}\in S_{k}}\left(\operatorname{sgn}\sigma\circ\tau^{-1}\right)\alpha^{\left(\sigma\circ\tau^{-1}\right)\left(1\right)}(v_{1})\ldots\alpha^{\left(\sigma\circ\tau^{-1}\right)\left(k\right)}(v_{k}) \\ &= \left(\operatorname{sgn}\tau\right)\sum_{\sigma\in S_{k}}\alpha^{\sigma(1)}(v_{1})\ldots\alpha^{\sigma(k)}(v_{k}) \quad \because \text{ relabelling} \\ &= \left(\operatorname{sgn}\tau\right)\left(\alpha^{1}\wedge\ldots\alpha^{k}\right)\left(v_{1},\ldots,v_{k}\right), \end{split}$$

as claimed.

■ Definition 12 (Decomposable *k*-form)

The k-form as discussed above is called a **decomposable** k-form, which for ease of reference shall be re-expressed here:

$$\left(\alpha^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge \alpha^k\right)(v_1, \ldots, v_k) := \sum_{\sigma \in S_k} (\operatorname{sgn} \sigma) \, \alpha^{\sigma(1)}(v_1) \alpha^{\sigma(2)}(v_2) \ldots \alpha^{\sigma(k)}(v_k).$$

66 Note 4.2.1

Not all k-forms are decomposable. If k = 1, n - 1 and n, but not for 1 < k < n - 1.

In A1Q5(c), we will show that there exists a 2-form in n = 4 that is not decomposable.

♦ Proposition 8 (Permutation on *k*-forms)

Let $\tau \in S_k$. Then

$$\alpha^{\tau(1)} \wedge \ldots \wedge \alpha^{\tau(k)} = (\operatorname{sgn} \tau) \alpha^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge \alpha^k$$

Firstly, note that $\operatorname{sgn} \tau = \operatorname{sgn} \tau^{-1}$. Then for any $(v_1, \ldots, v_k) \in V^k$, we have

$$\begin{split} & \alpha^{\tau(1)} \wedge \ldots \wedge \alpha^{\tau(k)}(v_1, \ldots, v_k) \\ &= \sum_{\sigma \in S_k} (\operatorname{sgn} \sigma) \alpha^{\sigma \circ \tau(1)}(v_1) \ldots \alpha^{\sigma \circ \tau(k)}(v_k) \\ &= \sum_{\sigma \circ \tau S_k} (\operatorname{sgn} \sigma \circ \tau) \left(\operatorname{sgn} \tau^{-1} \right) \alpha^{\sigma \circ \tau(1)}(v_1) \ldots \alpha^{\sigma \circ \tau(k)}(v_k) \\ &= (\operatorname{sgn} \tau) \sum_{\sigma \in S_k} (\operatorname{sgn} \sigma) \alpha^{\sigma(1)}(v_1) \ldots \alpha^{\sigma(k)}(v_k) \\ &= (\operatorname{sgn} \tau) (\alpha^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge \alpha^k). \end{split}$$

This completes our proof.

Proof for **Operation** 9 is in A1.

♦ Proposition 9 (Alternate Definition of a Decomposable *k*-form)

Another way we can define a decomposable k-form is

$$(\alpha^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge \alpha^k)(v_1, \ldots, v_k) = \sum_{\sigma \in S_k} (\operatorname{sgn} \sigma) \alpha^1(v_{\sigma(1)}) \ldots \alpha^k(v_{\sigma(k)}).$$

Theorem 10 (Basis of $\Lambda^k(V^*)$)

Let $\mathcal{B} = \{e_1, ..., e_n\}$ be a basis of V, a n-dimensional real vector space, and the dual basis $\mathcal{B}^* = \{e^1, ..., e^n\}$ of V^* . Then the set

$$\left\{ e^{j_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e^{j_k} \mid 1 \leq j_1 < j_2 < \ldots < j_k \leq n \right\}$$

is a basis of $\Lambda^k(V^*)$.

Corollary 11 (Dimension of $\Lambda^k(V^*)$)

The dimension of $\Lambda^k(V^*)$ is $\binom{n}{k}=\binom{n}{n-k}$, which is also the dimension of $\Lambda^{n-k}(V^*)$. This also works for k=0 1.

¹ This is why we wanted $\Lambda^0(V^*) = \mathbb{R}$.

Proof (Proof (Proof 10)

Firstly, let α be an arbitrary k-form, and let $v_1, \ldots, v_k \in V$. We may write

$$v_i = v_i^j e_j,$$

where $v_i^j \in \mathbb{R}$. Then

$$\alpha(v_1, \dots, v_k) = \alpha\left(v_1^{j_1}e_{j_1}, \dots, v_k^{j_k}e_{j_k}\right)$$
$$= v_1^{j_1} \dots v_k^{j_k}\alpha(e_{j_1}, \dots, e_{j_k})$$

by multilinearity and totally skew-symmetry of α , where $j_i \in \{1, ..., n\}$. Let

$$\alpha(e_{j_1},\ldots,e_{j_k})=\alpha_{j_1,\ldots,j_k},\tag{4.2}$$

represent the scalar. Then

$$\alpha(v_1, \dots, v_k) = \alpha_{j_1, \dots, j_k} v_1^{j_1} \dots v_k^{j_k}$$
$$= \alpha_{j_1, \dots, j_k} e^{j_1}(v_1) \dots e^{j_k}(v_k).$$

Now since $\alpha_{j_1,...,j_k}$ is totally skew-symmetric, $\alpha=0$ if any of the j_k 's are equal to one another. Thus we only need to consider the terms where the j_k 's are distinct. Now for any set of $\{j_1,\ldots,j_k\}$, there exists a unique $\sigma\in S_k$ such that σ rearranges the j_i 's so that j_1,\ldots,j_k is strictly increasing. Thus

$$\begin{split} \alpha(v_1,\ldots,v_k) &= \sum_{j_1 < \ldots < j_k} \sum_{\sigma \in S_k} \alpha_{j_{\sigma 1(),\ldots,\sigma(k)}} e^{j_{\sigma(1)}}(v_1) \ldots e^{j_{\sigma(k)}}(v_k) \\ &= \sum_{j_1 < \ldots < j_k} \sum_{\sigma \in S_k} (\operatorname{sgn}\sigma) \alpha_{j_1,\ldots,j_k} e^{j_{\sigma(1)}}(v_1) \ldots e^{j_{\sigma(k)}}(v_k) \\ &= \sum_{j_1 < \ldots < j_k} \alpha_{j_1,\ldots,j_k} \sum_{\sigma \in S_k} (\operatorname{sgn}\sigma) e^{j_{\sigma(1)}}(v_1) \ldots e^{j_{\sigma(k)}}(v_k) \\ &= \underbrace{\sum_{j_1 < \ldots < j_k} \alpha_{j_1,\ldots,j_k} \left(e^{j_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e^{j_k} \right)}_{\sigma}(v_1,\ldots,v_k). \end{split}$$

Thus we have that

$$\alpha = \sum_{j_1 < \dots < j_k} \alpha_{j_1, \dots, j_k} e^{j_1} \wedge \dots \wedge e^{j_k}. \tag{4.3}$$

Hence $e^{j_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e^{j_k}$ spans $\Lambda^k(V^*)$.

Now suppose that

$$\sum_{j_1 < \dots < j_k} \alpha_{j_1, \dots, j_k} e^{j_1} \wedge \dots \wedge e^{j_k}$$

is the zero element in $\Lambda^k(V^*)$. Then the scalar in Equation (4.2) must be 0 for any j_1, \ldots, j_k . Thus

$$\left\{ e^{j_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e^{j_k} \mid 1 \leq j_1 < j_2 < \ldots < j_k \leq n \right\}$$

is linearly independent.

5.1 Decomposable k-forms Continued

There exists an equivalent, and perhaps more useful, expression for Equation (4.3), which we shall derive here. Sine $\alpha_{j_1,...,j_k}$ and $e^{j_1} \wedge ... \wedge e^{j_k}$ are both totally skew-symmetric in their k indices, and since there are k! elements in S_k , we have that

$$\begin{split} \frac{1}{k!}\alpha_{j_1,\ldots,j_k}e^{j_1}\wedge\ldots\wedge e^{j_k} &= \frac{1}{k!}\sum_{\substack{j_1,\ldots,j_k\\ \text{distinct}}}\alpha_{j_1,\ldots,j_k}e^{j_1}\wedge\ldots\wedge e^{j_k}\\ &= \frac{1}{k!}\sum_{\substack{j_1<\ldots< j_k\\ j_1<\ldots< j_k}}\sum_{\sigma\in S_k}\alpha_{\sigma(j_1),\ldots,\sigma(j_k)}e^{\sigma(j_1)}\wedge\ldots\wedge e^{\sigma(j_k)}\\ &= \frac{1}{k!}\sum_{\substack{j_1<\ldots< j_k\\ j_1<\ldots< j_k}}\sum_{\sigma\in S_k}(\operatorname{sgn}\sigma)\alpha_{j_1,\ldots,j_k}(\operatorname{sgn}\sigma)e^{j_1}\wedge\ldots\wedge e^{j_k}\\ &= \frac{1}{k!}\sum_{\substack{j_1<\ldots< j_k\\ j_1<\ldots< j_k}}\sum_{\sigma\in S_k}\alpha_{j_1,\ldots,j_k}e^{j_1}\wedge\ldots\wedge e^{j_k}. \end{split}$$

The major advantage of the expression with $\frac{1}{k!}$ is that all k indices j_1, \ldots, j_k are summed over all possible values $1, \ldots, n$ instead of having to start with a specific order.

 $^{\scriptscriptstyle{1}}$ Note that $(\operatorname{sgn}\sigma)(\operatorname{sgn}\sigma)=1$.

5.2 Wedge Product of Forms

■ Definition 13 (Wedge Product)

Let $\alpha \in \Lambda^k(V^*)$ and $\beta \in \Lambda^l(V^*)$. We define $\alpha \wedge \beta \in \Lambda^{k+l}(V^*)$ as

follows. Choose a basis $\mathcal{B}^* = \left\{e^1, \ldots, e^k\right\}$ of V^* . Then we may write

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{k!} \alpha_{i_1,\dots,i_k} e^{i_1} \wedge \dots \wedge e^{i_k} \quad \beta = \frac{1}{l!} \beta_{j_1,\dots,j_l} e^{j_1} \wedge \dots \wedge e^{j_l}.$$

We define the wedge product as

$$\alpha \wedge \beta := \frac{1}{k!!!} \alpha_{i_1,\dots,i_k} \beta_{j_1,\dots,j_l} e^{i_1} \wedge \dots \wedge e^{i_k} \wedge e^{j_1} \wedge \dots \wedge e^{j_l}$$

$$= \sum_{i_1 < \dots < i_k} \sum_{j_1 < \dots < j_l} \alpha_{i_1,\dots,i_k} \beta_{j_1,\dots,j_k} e^{i_1} \wedge \dots \wedge e^{i_k} \wedge e^{j_1} \wedge \dots \wedge e^{j_l}.$$

One can then question if this definition is well-defined, since it appears to be reliant on the choice of a basis. In A1Q4(a), we will show that this definition of $\alpha \wedge \beta$ is indeed well-defined. In particular, one can show that we may express $\alpha \wedge \beta$ in a way that does not involve any of the basis vectors e^1, \ldots, e^n .

■ Definition 14 (Degree of a Form)

For $\alpha \in \Lambda^k(V^*)$, we say that α has degree k, and write $|\alpha| = k$.

66 Note 5.2.1

By our definition of a wedge product above, we have that

$$|\alpha \wedge \beta| = |\alpha| + |\beta|$$
.

Note that since a 0-form lies in $\Lambda^k(V^*)$ for all k, we let |k| be anything / undefined.

Remark 5.2.1

1. $\alpha \wedge \beta$ is linear in α and linear in β by its definition, i.e. for any $t_1, t_2 \in \mathbb{R}$, $\alpha_1, \alpha_2 \in \Lambda^k(V^*)$, and any $\beta \in \Lambda^l(V^*)$,

$$(t_1\alpha_1 + t_2\alpha_2) \wedge \beta = t_1(\alpha_1 \wedge \beta) + t_2(\alpha_2 \wedge \beta),$$

and a similar equation works for linearity in β .

3. The wedge product is not commutative. In fact, if $|\alpha|=k$ and $|\beta|=l$, then

$$\beta \wedge \alpha = (-1)^{kl} \alpha \wedge \beta. \tag{5.1}$$

We call this property of a wedge product graded commutative, super commutative or skewed-commutative.

Note that this also means that even degree forms commute with any form.

Also, note that if $|\alpha|$ is odd, then $\alpha \wedge \alpha = 0$.

Example 5.2.1

Let $\alpha = e^1 \wedge e^3$ and $\beta = e^2 + e^3$. Then

$$\alpha \wedge \beta = (e^1 \wedge e^3) \wedge (e^2 + e^3)$$

$$= e^1 \wedge e^3 \wedge e^2 + e^1 \wedge e^3 \wedge e^3$$

$$= -e^1 \wedge e^2 \wedge e^3 + 0$$

$$= -e^1 \wedge e^2 \wedge e^3.$$

Corollary 12 (Linearly Dependent 1-forms)

Suppose $\alpha^1, \ldots, \alpha^k$ are linearly dependent 1-forms on V. Then $\alpha^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge \alpha^k = 0$.

The contrapositive of Corollary 12 is true as well: if the wedge product is equivalently zero, then we can rewrite the wedge product so that one of the *k*-forms is expressed in terms of the others.

Proof

Suppose at least one of the α^{j} is a linear combination of the rest, i.e.

$$\alpha^{j} = c_{1}\alpha^{1} + \ldots + c_{i-1}\alpha^{j-1} + c_{i+1}\alpha^{j+1} + \ldots + c_{k}\alpha^{k}.$$

Since all of the α^{i} 's are 1-forms, we will have $\alpha^{i} \wedge \alpha^{i}$ in the wedge product, and so our result follows from our earlier remark.

Example 5.2.2

Let $\alpha = \alpha_i e^i$, $\beta = \beta_j e^j \in V^*$. Then

$$\begin{split} \alpha \wedge \beta &= \alpha_i \beta_j e^i \wedge e^j \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \alpha_i \beta_j e^i \wedge e^j + \frac{1}{2} \alpha_i \beta_j e^i \wedge e^j \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \alpha_i \beta_j e^i \wedge e^j - \frac{1}{2} \alpha_j \beta_i e^i \wedge e^j \\ &= \frac{1}{2} (\alpha_i \beta_j - \alpha_j \beta_i) e^1 \wedge e^j \\ &= \frac{1}{2} (\alpha \wedge \beta)_{ij} e^i \wedge e^j, \end{split}$$

where $(\alpha \wedge \beta)_{ij} = \alpha_i \beta_j - \alpha_j \beta_i$.

We shall prove the following in A₁Q6.

Exercise 5.2.1

Let $\alpha = \alpha_i e^i \in V^*$, and

$$\eta = \frac{1}{2} \eta_{jk} e^j \wedge e^k \in \Lambda^2(V^*).$$

Show that

$$\alpha \wedge \eta = \frac{1}{6!} (\alpha \wedge \eta)_{ijk} e^i \wedge e^j \wedge e^k,$$

where

$$(\alpha \wedge \eta)_{ijk} = \alpha_1 \eta_{jk} + \alpha_i \eta_{ki} + \alpha_k \eta_{ij}.$$

5.3 Pullback of Forms

For a linear map $T \in L(V, W)$, we have seen its induced dual map $T^* \in L(W^*, V^*)$. We shall now generalize this dual map to k-forms, for k > 1.

■ Definition 15 (Pullback)

Let $T \in L(V, W)$. For any $k \ge 1$, define a map

$$T^*: \Lambda^k(W^*) \to \Lambda^k(V^*),$$

called the *pullback*, as such: let $\beta \in \Lambda^k(W^*)$, and define $T^*\beta \in \Lambda^k(V^*)$

such that

$$(T^*\beta)(v_1,\ldots,v_k) := \beta(T(v_1),\ldots,T(v_k)).$$

66 Note 5.3.1

It is clear that $T^*\beta$ is multilinear and alternating, since T itself is linear, and β is multilinear and alternating.

The pullback has the following properties which we shall prove in A1Q8.

♦ Proposition 13 (Properties of the Pullback)

1. The map $T^*: \Lambda^k(W^*) \to \Lambda^k(V^*)$ is linear, i.e. $\forall \alpha, \beta \in \Lambda^k(W^*)$ and $s, t \in \mathbb{R}$,

$$T^*(t\alpha + s\beta) = tT^*\alpha + sT^*\beta. \tag{5.2}$$

2. The map T^* is compatible in the wedge product operation in the following sense: if $\alpha \in \Lambda^k(W^*)$ and $\beta \in \Lambda^l(W^*)$, then

$$T^*(\alpha \wedge \beta) = (T^*\alpha) \wedge (T^*\beta).$$

Part II

The Vector Space \mathbb{R}^n as a Smooth Manifold

6.1 The space $\Lambda^k(V)$ of k-vectors and Determinants

Recall that we identified V with V^{**} , and so we may consider $\Lambda^k(V) = \Lambda^k(V^{**})$ as the space of k-linear alternating maps

$$\underbrace{V^* \times V^* \times \ldots \times V^*}_{k \text{ copies}} \to \mathbb{R}.$$

Consequently (to an extent), the elements of $\Lambda^k(V)$ are called k-vectors. A k-vector is an alternating k-linear map that takes k covectors (of 1-forms) to \mathbb{R} .

Example 6.1.1

Let $\{e_1, \ldots, e_n\}$ be a basis of V with the dual basis $\{e^1, \ldots, e^n\}$, which is a basis of V^* . Then any $\mathcal{A} \in \Lambda^k(V^*)$ can be written uniquely as

$$\mathcal{A} = \sum_{i_1 < \dots < i_k} \mathcal{A}^{i_1, \dots, i_k} e_{i_1} \wedge \dots \wedge e_{i_k}$$

where

$$\mathcal{A}^{i_1,\ldots,i_k}=\mathcal{A}\left(e^{i_1},\ldots,e^{i_k}\right).$$

We also have that

$$\mathcal{A} = \frac{1}{k!} \mathcal{A}^{i_1, \dots, i_k} e_{i_1} \wedge \dots \wedge e_{i_k}.$$

Note that

$$\dim \Lambda^k(V) = \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!}.$$

E Definition 16 (k^{th} Exterior Power of T)

Let $T \in L(V, W)$. Then T induces a linear map

$$\Lambda^k(T) \in L\left(\Lambda^k(V), \Lambda^k(W)\right)$$
,

defined as

$$(\Lambda^k T)(v_1 \wedge \ldots \wedge v_k) = T(v_1) \wedge \ldots \wedge T(v_k),$$

where $v_1, ..., v_k$ are decomposable elements of $\Lambda^k(V)$, and then extended by linearity to all of $\Lambda^k(V)$. The map Λ^kT is called the k^{th} exterior power of T.

66 Note 6.1.2

Consider the special case of when W = V and $k = n = \dim V$. Then $T \in L(V)$ induces a linear operator $\Lambda^n(T) \in L(\Lambda^n(V))$. It is also noteworthy to point out that any linear operator on a 1-dimensional vector space is just scalar multiplication.

Furthermore, notice that in the above special case, we have

$$\dim \Lambda^n(V) = \binom{n}{n} = 1.$$

■ Definition 17 (Determinant)

Let dim V = n and $T \in L(V)$. We have that dim $\Lambda^n(V) = 1$. Then $\Lambda^n T \in L(\Lambda^n(V))$ is a scalar multiple of the identity. We denote this scalar multiple by det T, and call it the **determinant** of T, i.e.

$$\Lambda^n(T)\mathcal{A} = (\det T)IA$$

for any $A \in \Lambda^n(V)$, where I is the identity operator.

66 Note 6.1.3

We should verify that this 'new' definition of a determinant agrees with the 'classical' definition of a determinant.

Proof

Let $\mathcal{B} = \{e_1, \dots, e_n\}$ be a basis of V, and let $A = [T]_{\mathcal{B}}$ be the $n \times n$ matrix of T wrt the basis \mathcal{B} . So $T(e_i) = A_i^j e_j$. Then $\{e_1 \wedge \ldots \wedge e_n\}$ is a basis of $\Lambda^n(V)$, and

$$\begin{split} (\Lambda^n T) \left(e_1 \wedge \ldots \wedge e_n \right) &= T(e_1) \wedge \ldots \wedge T(e_n) \\ &= A_1^{i_1} e_{i_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge A_n^{i_n} e_{i_n} \\ &= A_1^{i_1} A_2^{i_2} \ldots A_n^{i_n} \ e_{i_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{i_n} \\ &= \sum_{\substack{i_1, \dots, i_n \\ \text{distinct}}} A_1^{i_1} \ldots A_n^{i_n} \ e_{i_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{i_n} \\ &= \sum_{\sigma \in S_n} A_1^{\sigma(1)} \ldots A_n^{\sigma(n)} \ e_{\sigma(1)} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{\sigma(n)} \\ &= \sum_{\sigma \in S_n} A_1^{\sigma(1)} \ldots A_n^{\sigma(n)} \ \left(\operatorname{sgn} \sigma \right) e_1 \wedge \ldots \wedge e_n \\ &= \left(\sum_{\sigma \in S_n} (\operatorname{sgn} \sigma) A_1^{\sigma(1)} \ldots A_n^{\sigma(n)} \right) \left(e_1 \wedge \ldots \wedge e_n \right) \\ &= \left(\sum_{\sigma \in S_n} (\operatorname{sgn} \sigma) \prod_{i=1}^n A_i^{\sigma(i)} \right) \left(e_1 \wedge \ldots \wedge e_n \right). \end{split}$$

We observe that we indeed have

$$\det T = \sum_{\sigma \in S_n} (\operatorname{sgn} \sigma) \prod_{i=1}^n A_i^{\sigma(i)}.$$

Consider the following general situation: Let $T \in L(V, W)$, where $\dim V = n$ and $\dim W = m$. Let $\mathcal{B} = \{e_1, \dots, e_n\}$ be a basis of V, and $C = \{f_1, \ldots, f_m\}$ a basis of W.

Then there exists a unique $m \times n$ matrix $A = [T]_{\mathcal{C},\mathcal{B}}$ with respect to these bases that represents T. A is defined by the property

$$[T(v)]_{\mathcal{C}} = [T]_{\mathcal{C},\mathcal{B}}[v]_{\mathcal{B}} = A[v]_{\mathcal{B}},$$

which means that the left multiplication by $A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ on the coordinate vector $[v]_{\mathcal{B}} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times 1}$ of v, with respect to \mathcal{B} , gives the coordinate vector $[T(v)]_{\mathcal{C}} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times 1}$ of T(v), with respect to \mathcal{C} . Then, explicitly, let

$$T(e_i) = A_i^j f_i, (6.1)$$

where $1 \le i \le n$ and $1 \le j \le m$. Then for $v = v^i e_i$, we have

$$T(v) = v^i T(e_i) = v^i A_i^j f_i = (A_i^j v^i) f_i,$$

which is what we could expect from the map T.

Note that the i^{th} column of A is the coordinate vector $[T(e_i)]_{\mathcal{C}}$ of the vector $T(e_i) \in W$, with respect to \mathcal{C} . Then along with Equation (6.1), we have that

$$A_i^j = f^j(T(e_i)). (6.2)$$

Following the above observation, now consider

$$\Lambda^k T \in L(\Lambda^k(V), \Lambda^k(W))$$

where $1 \le k \le \min\{m, n\}$. Then the set

$$\Lambda^k \mathcal{B} = \{ e_{i_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{i_k} \mid 1 \leq i_1 < \ldots < i_k \leq n \}$$

is a basis for $\Lambda^k(V)$ and the set

$$\Lambda^k \mathcal{C} = \{ f_{j_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge f_{j_k} \mid 1 \leq j_1 < \ldots < j_k \leq m \}$$

is a basis of $\Lambda^k(W)$.

Let $\Lambda^k A$ denote the $\binom{m}{k} \times \binom{n}{k}$ matrix $[\Lambda^k T]_{\Lambda^k \mathcal{C}, \Lambda^k \mathcal{B}}$ representing $\Lambda^k T$ with respect to the bases $\Lambda^k \mathcal{B}$ and $\Lambda^k \mathcal{C}$ of $\Lambda^k V$ and $\Lambda^k W$, respectively. Let $I = (i_1, \ldots, i_k)$ denote a strictly increasing k-tuple in $\{1, \ldots, n\}$, and $J = (j_1, \ldots, j_k)$ denote a strictly increasing k-tuple in

 $\{1,\ldots,m\}$. Then let

$$e_I = e_{i_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{i_k},$$

 $f_J = e_{j_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge j_{j_k}.$

Thus from Equation (6.1), we have

$$(\Lambda^k T)(e_I) = A_I^J f_I, \tag{6.3}$$

where the sum over J is over all $\binom{m}{k}$ strictly increasing k-tuples in $\{1,\ldots,m\}.$

♦ Proposition 14 (Structure of the Determinant of a Linear Map of k-forms)

The entires A_I^J of $\Lambda^k A$ are given by

$$A_{I}^{I} = \det \begin{pmatrix} A_{i_{1}}^{j_{1}} & \dots & A_{i_{k}}^{j_{1}} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ A_{i_{1}}^{j_{k}} & \dots & A_{i_{k}}^{j_{k}} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{6.4}$$

That is, A_I^J is the $k \times k$ minor obtained from A by deleting all rows except j_1, \ldots, j_k and all columns except i_1, \ldots, i_k .

Proof

We shall explicitly compute Equation (6.4). Observe that

$$\begin{split} &(\Lambda^k T)(e_I) \\ &= \Lambda^k T(e_{i_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{i_k}) \\ &= T(e_{i_1}) \wedge \ldots \wedge T(e_{i_k}) \\ &= (A_{i_1}^{j_1} f_{j_1}) \wedge \ldots \wedge (A_{i_k}^{j_k} f_{j_k}) \\ &= A_{i_1}^{j_1} \ldots A_{i_k}^{j_k} f_{j_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge f_{j_k} \\ &= \sum_{\substack{j_1, \dots, j_k \\ \text{distinct}}} A_{i_1}^{j_1} \ldots A_{i_k}^{j_k} f_{j_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge f_{j_k} \\ &= \sum_{1 \leq j_1 < \ldots < j_k \leq n} \sum_{\sigma \in S_k} A_{i_1}^{j_{\sigma(1)}} \ldots A_{i_k}^{j_{\sigma(k)}} f_{j_{\sigma(1)}} \wedge \ldots \wedge f_{j_{\sigma(k)}} \\ &= \sum_{1 \leq j_1 < \ldots < j_k \leq n} \left(\sum_{\sigma \in S_k} (\operatorname{sgn} \sigma) A_{i_1}^{j_{\sigma(1)}} \ldots A_{i_k}^{j_{\sigma(k)}} \right) f_{j_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge f_{j_k} \\ &= \sum_{J} \left(\sum_{\sigma \in S_k} (\operatorname{sgn} \sigma) A_{i_1}^{j_{\sigma(1)}} \ldots A_{i_k}^{j_{\sigma(k)}} \right) f_{J} \\ &= A_I^J f_J, \end{split}$$

where the final line follows from the definition of a determinant, and is precisely Equation (6.4).

The following corollary is important to us, not now, but later on when we begin the section Submanifolds in Terms of Local Parameterizations.

Corollary 15 (Nonvanishing Minor)

Let A be an $m \times n$ matrix with rank $k \leq \min\{m, n\}$. Then there exists a $k \times k$ submatrix \tilde{A} of A such that $\det \tilde{A} \neq 0$, i.e. A has a nonvanishing $k \times k$ minor \tilde{A} .

Proof

Consider the linear map $T: \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^m$, given by T(v) = Av. In particular, we have $A = [T]_{\mathcal{C}_{std},\mathcal{B}_{std}}$, where \mathcal{B}_{std} is the standard basis

of \mathbb{R}^n and \mathcal{C}_{std} the standard basis of \mathbb{R}^m .

Note that rank $T = \dim \operatorname{Img} T$, which is exactly the dimension of the span of the columns of A, since columns of A are the images $A\hat{e}_1, \ldots, A\hat{e}_n$ of the standard basis vector of \mathbb{R}^n . From the ranknullity theorem, we have that rank $T \leq \min\{m, n\}$.

By our supposition, rank T = k, and the columns of A span Img *T*, we have that there exists a subset of *k* columns of *A* that are linearly independent vectors, in \mathbb{R}^{n-1} . Let us index the columns by i_1, \ldots, i_k . Then $\{A\hat{e}_{i_1}, \ldots, A\hat{e}_{i_k}\}$ is a linearly independent set in \mathbb{R}^m . By the contrapositive of Corollary 12, we have that

$$(\Lambda^k T)(\hat{e}_{i_1} \dots \hat{e}_{i_k}) = (A\hat{e}_{i_1}) \wedge \dots \wedge (\hat{e}_{i_k}) \neq 0 \in \Lambda^k(\mathbb{R}^m).$$

Thus $\Lambda^k T: \Lambda^k(\mathbb{R}^n) \to \Lambda^k(\mathbb{R}^m)$ is not the zero map. Therefore, there exists at least one non-zero entry in the matrix $\Lambda^k A$. The desired result follows from Proposition 14.

¹ Note that the *k* vectors need not be unique.

6.2 *Orientation Revisited*

Now that we have this notion, we may finally clarify to ourselves what an orientation is without having to rely on roundabout methods as before.

■ Definition 18 (Orientation)

Let V be an n-dimensional real vector space. Then $\Lambda^n(V)$ is a 1-dimensional real vector space. An orientation on V is defined as a choice of a nonzero element $\mu \in \Lambda^n(V)$, up to positive scalar multiples.

66 Note 6.2.1

For any two such orientations μ and $\tilde{\mu}$, we have that $\tilde{\mu} = \lambda \mu$ for some non-zero $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$, and by using the definition of having the same orientation, we say that $\mu \sim \tilde{\mu}$ if $\lambda > 0$ and $\mu \nsim \tilde{\mu}$ if $\lambda < 0$.

Basically, we now have a more mathematical way of saying 'pick a direction and consider it as the positive direction of *V*, and that'll be our orientation'.

Exercise 6.2.1

Check that \blacksquare Definition 18 agrees with \blacksquare Definition 5. (Hint: Let $\mathcal{B} = \{e_1, \ldots, e_n\}$ be a basis of V and let $\mu = e_1 \wedge \ldots \wedge e_n$.)

6.3 Topology on \mathbb{R}^n

We shall begin with a brief review of some ideas from multivariable calculus.

We know that \mathbb{R}^n is an n-dimensional real vector space. It has a canonical **positive-definite inner product**, aka the **Euclidean inner product**, or the **dot product**: given $x = (x_1, \dots, x_n), y = (y_1, \dots, y_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n$, we have

$$x \cdot y = \sum_{i=1}^{n} x^{i} y^{i} = \delta_{ij} x^{i} y^{j}.$$

The following properties follow from above: for any $t,s\in\mathbb{R}$ and $x,y,w\in\mathbb{R}^n$,

- $(tx + sy) \cdot w = t(x \cdot w) = s(y \cdot w);$
- $x \cdot (ty + sw) = t(x \cdot y) + t(x \cdot w);$
- $x \cdot y = y \cdot x$;
- (positive definiteness) $x \cdot x \ge 0$ with $x \cdot x = 0 \iff x = 0$;
- (Cauchy-Schwarz Ineq.) $-\|x\| \|y\| \le x \cdot y \le \|x\| \|y\|$, i.e.

$$x \cdot y = ||x|| \, ||y|| \cos \theta$$

where $\theta \in [0, \pi]$.

E Definition 19 (Distance)

The distance between $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n$ *is given as*

$$dist(x,y) = ||x - y||.$$

66 Note 6.3.1 (Triangle Inequality)

Note that the triangle inequality holds for the distance function²: for any $x, z \in \mathbb{R}^n$, for any $y \in \mathbb{R}^n$,

² See also PMATH 351

$$dist(x,z) \le dist(x,y) + dist(y,z).$$

■ Definition 20 (Open Ball)

Let $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ and $\varepsilon > 0$. The open ball of radius ε centered at x is

$$B_{\varepsilon}(x) = \{ y \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid \operatorname{dist}(x, y) < \varepsilon \}.$$

A subset $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ is called open if $\forall x \in U$, $\exists \varepsilon > 0$ such that

$$B_{\varepsilon}(x) \subseteq U$$
.

Example 6.3.1

- \emptyset and \mathbb{R}^n are open.
- If *U* and *V* are open, so is $U \cap V$.
- If $\{U_{\alpha}\}_{{\alpha}\in A}$ is open, so is $\bigcup_{{\alpha}\in A} U_{\alpha}$.

ZLecture 7 Jan 21st

7.1 Topology on \mathbb{R}^n (Continued)

■ Definition 21 (Closed)

A subset $F \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ is **closed** if its complement $\mathbb{R}^n \setminus F =: F^C$ is open.

***** Warning

A subset does not have to be either open or closed. Most subsets are neither.

66 Note 7.1.1

- Arbitrary intersections of closed sets is closed.
- Finite unions of closed sets is closed.

66 Note 7.1.2 (Notation)

We call

$$\overline{B}_{\varepsilon}(x) := \{ y \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid ||x - y|| \le \varepsilon \}$$

the closed ball of radius ε centered at x.

■ Definition 22 (Continuity)

Let $A \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$. Let $f: A \to \mathbb{R}^m$, and $x \in A$. We say that f is **continuous** at x if $\forall \varepsilon > 0$, $\exists \delta > 0$ such that

$$f(B_{\delta}(x) \cap A) \subseteq B_{\varepsilon}(f(x)).$$

We say that f is continuous on A if $\forall x \in A$, f is continuous on x.

♦ Proposition 16 (Inverse of a Continuous Map is Open)

For a proof, see PMATH 351.

Let $A \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ and $f: A \to \mathbb{R}^m$. Then f is continuous on A iff whenever $V \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m$ is open, $f^{-1}(V) = A \cap U$ for some $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ is open.

■ Definition 23 (Homeomorphism)

Let $A \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ and $f: A \to \mathbb{R}^m$. Let B = f(A). We say that f is a homeomorphism of A onto B if $f: A \to B$

- is a bijection;
- and $f^{-1}: B \to A$ is continuous on A and B, respectively.

7.2 Calculus on \mathbb{R}^n

Let $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ be open, and $f: U \to \mathbb{R}^m$ be a continuous map. Also, let

$$x = (x^1, \dots, x^n) \in \mathbb{R}^n$$
 and $y = (y^1, \dots, y^m) \in \mathbb{R}^m$.

Then the **component functions** of *f* are defined by

$$y^k = f^k(x^1, ..., x^n)$$
, where $y = (y^1, ..., y^m) = f(x) = f(x^1, ..., x^n)$.

Thus $f = (f^1, ..., f^m)$ is a collection of m-real-valued functions on $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$.

■ Definition 24 (Smoothness)

Let $x_0 \in U$. We say that f is **smooth** (or \mathbb{C}^{∞} , or infinitely differen*tiable*) if all partial derivatives of each component function f^k exists and are continuous at x_0 . I.e., if we let $\frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} = \partial_i$ denote the operator of partial differentiation in the x^i direction, then

$$\partial_1^{\alpha_1} \dots \partial_n^{\alpha_n} f^k$$

exists and is continuous at x_0 , for all k = 1, ..., n, and all $\alpha_i \ge 0$.

■ Definition 25 (Diffeomorphism)

Let $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ be open, $f: U \to \mathbb{R}^m$, and V = f(U). We say f is a *diffeomorphism* of U onto V if $f: U \rightarrow V$ is bijective¹, smooth, and that its inverse f^{-1} is smooth.

We say that U and V are diffeomorphic if such a diffeomorphism exists.

¹ A function that is **not injective** may not have a surjection from its image.

66 Note 7.2.1

A diffeomorphism preserves the 'smoothness of a structure', i.e. the notion of calculus is the same for diffeomorphic spaces.

Example 7.2.1

If $f:U\to V$ is a diffeomorphism , then $g:V\to\mathbb{R}$ is smooth iff $g \circ f : U \to \mathbb{R}$ is smooth.

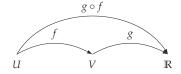


Figure 7.1: Preservation of smoothness via diffeomorphisms

66 Note 7.2.2

A diffeomorphism is also called a smooth reparameterization (or just a parameterization for short).

■ Definition 26 (Differential)

Let $f: U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$ be a smooth mapping, and $x_0 \in U$. The **differential** of f at x_0 , denoted $(df)_{x_0}$, is a linear map $(Df)_{x_0}: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$, or an $m \times n$ real matrix, given by

$$(\mathbf{D}f)_{x_0} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial f^1}{\partial x^1}(x_0) & \dots & \frac{\partial f^1}{\partial x^n}(x_0) \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial f^m}{\partial x^1}(x_0) & \dots & \frac{\partial f^m}{\partial x^n}(x_0) \end{pmatrix},$$

where the notation (x_0) means evaluation at x_0 , and the (i,j) th entry of $(Df)_{x_0}$ is $\frac{\partial f^i}{\partial x^j}(x_0)$. $(Df)_{x_0}$ is also called the Jacobian or tangent map of f at x_0 .

66 Note 7.2.3 (Change of notation) We changed the notation for the differential on Feb 3rd to using D f. The old

notation was df.

♦ Proposition 17 (Differential of the Identity Map is the Identity Matrix)

Let $f: U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n$ be the identity mapping f(x) = x. Then $(D f)_{x_0} = I_n$, the $n \times n$ matrix, then for any $x_0 \in U$.

Proof

Since f(x) = x, since $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$, we may consider the function f as

$$f(x) = I_n x = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & x_2 & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & x_n \end{pmatrix}.$$

Then it follows from differentiation that

$$(Df)_{x_0} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

and it does not matter what x_0 is.

66 Note 7.2.4

In multivariable calculus, we learned that if f is smooth at x_0 ², then

$$f(x) = f(x_0) + (Df)_{x_0}(x - x_0) + Q(x),$$
_{m×1}
_{m×1}
_{m×1}

where $Q: U \to \mathbb{R}^m$ satisfies

$$\lim_{x \to x_0} \frac{Q(x)}{\|x - x_0\|} = 0.$$

² Back in multivariable calculus, just being C^1 at x_0 is sufficient for being smooth

66 Note 7.2.5

Note that when n = m = 1, the existence of the differential of a continuous real-valued function f(x) at a real number $x_0 \in U \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ is the same of the usual derivative f'(x) at $x = x_0$. In fact, $f'(x_0) = (D f)_{x_0} =$ $\frac{df}{dx}(x_0)$.

Theorem 18 (The Chain Rule)

Let

$$f: U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$$
$$g: V \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m \to \mathbb{R}^p,$$

be two smooth maps, where U, V are open in \mathbb{R}^n and \mathbb{R}^m , respectively, and and such that V = f(U). Then the composition $g \circ f$ is also smooth. Further, if $x_0 \in U$, then

$$(D(g \circ f))_{x_0} = (Dg)_{f(x_0)}(Df)_{x_0}. \tag{7.1}$$

7.3 Smooth Curves in \mathbb{R}^n and Tangent Vectors

We shall now look into tangent vectors and the tangent space at every point of \mathbb{R}^n . We need these two notions to construct objects such as vector fields and **differential forms**. In particular, we need to consider these objects in multiple abstract ways so as to be able to generalize these notions in more abstract spaces, particularly to **submanifolds** of \mathbb{R}^n later on.

Plan We shall first consider the notion of **smooth curves**, which we shall simply call a curve, and shall always (in this course) assume curves as smooth objects. We shall then use **velocities** of curves to define **tangent vectors**.

■ Definition 27 (Smooth Curve)

Let $I \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ be an open interval. A smooth map $\varphi : I \to \mathbb{R}^n$ is called a **smooth curve**, or **curve**, in \mathbb{R}^n . Let $t \in I$. Then each of its component functions $\varphi^k(t)$ in $\varphi(t) = (\varphi^1(t), \ldots, \varphi^n(t))$ is a smooth real-valued function of t.

Example 7.3.1

Let a, b > 0. Consider $\varphi : I \to \mathbb{R}^3$ given by

$$\varphi(t) = (a\cos t, a\sin t, bt).$$

Since each of the components are smooth³, we have that φ itself is also smooth. The shape of the curve is as shown in Figure 7.3.

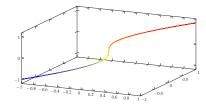


Figure 7.2: A curve in \mathbb{R}^3

³ Wait, do we actually consider *bt* smooth when it's only *C*¹, in this course?

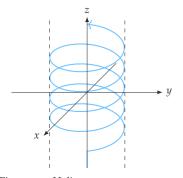


Figure 7.3: Helix curve



8.1 Smooth Curves in \mathbb{R}^n and Tangent Vectors (Continued)

■ Definition 28 (Velocity)

Let $\varphi: I \to \mathbb{R}^n$ be a curve. The **velocity** of the curve φ at the point $\varphi(t_0) \in \mathbb{R}^n$ for $t_0 \in I$ is defined as

$$\varphi'(t_0) = (d\varphi)_{t_0} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times 1} \simeq \mathbb{R}^n.$$

66 Note 8.1.1

 $\varphi'(t_0) = (d\varphi)_{t_0}$ is the instantaneous rate of change of φ at the point $\varphi(t_0) \in \mathbb{R}^n$.

Example 8.1.1

From the last example, we had $\varphi(t)=(a\cos t,a\sin t,bt)$ for a,b>0. Then

$$\varphi'(t) = (-a\sin t, a\cos t, b)$$

Let $t_0 = \frac{\pi}{2}$. Then the velocity of φ at

$$\varphi\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = (0, a, \frac{b\pi}{2})$$

is

$$\varphi'\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = (-a, 0, b).$$

■ Definition 29 (Equivalent Curves)

Let $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$. Let $\varphi : I \to \mathbb{R}^n$ and $\psi : \tilde{I} \to \mathbb{R}^n$ be two smooth curves in \mathbb{R}^n such that both the open intervals I and \tilde{I} contain 0. We say that φ is equivalent at p to ψ , and denote this as

$$\varphi \sim_p \psi$$
,

iff

- $\varphi(0) = \psi(0) = p$, and
- $\varphi'(0) = \psi'(0)$.

66 Note 8.1.2

In other words, $\varphi \sim_p \psi$ iff both φ and ψ passes through p at t=0, and have the same velocity at this point.

Example 8.1.2

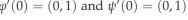
Consider the two curves

$$\varphi(t) = (\cos t, \sin t)$$
 and $\psi(t) = (1, t)$,

where $t \in \mathbb{R}$.

Notice that at p = (1,0), i.e. t = 0, we have

$$\varphi'(0) = (0,1)$$
 and $\psi'(0) = (0,1)$.



Thus

$$\varphi \sim_p \psi$$
.



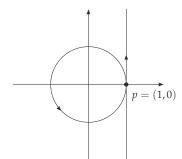


Figure 8.1: Simple example of equivalent curves in Example 8.1.2

♦ Proposition 19 (Equivalent Curves as an Equivalence Relation)

 \sim_p is an equivalence relation.

Exercise 8.1.1

Proof of Proposition 19 is really straightforward so try it yourself.

■ Definition 30 (Tangent Vector)

A tangent vector to \mathbb{R}^n at p is a vector $v \in \mathbb{R}^n$, thought of as 'emanating' from p, is in a one-to-one correspondence with an equivalence class

$$[\varphi]_p := \{ \psi : I \to \mathbb{R}^n \mid \psi \sim_p \varphi \}.$$

■ Definition 31 (Tangent Space)

The **tangent space** to \mathbb{R}^n at p, denoted $T_p(\mathbb{R}^n)$ is the set of all equivalence classes $[\varphi]_p$ wrt \sim_p .

Now if $\varphi: I \to \mathbb{R}^n$ is a smooth curve in \mathbb{R}^n with $0 \in I$, and $\varphi'(0) = v \in \mathbb{R}^n$, then we write v_p to denote the element in $T_p(\mathbb{R}^n)$ that it represents.

\leftrightarrow Proposition 20 (Canonical Bijection from $T_p(\mathbb{R}^n)$ to \mathbb{R}^n)

There exists a canonical bijection from $T_p(\mathbb{R}^n)$ to \mathbb{R}^n . Using this bijection, we can equip the tangent space $T_p(\mathbb{R}^n)$ with the structure of a real n-dimensional real vector space.

Proof

Let $v_p = [\varphi]_p \in T_p(\mathbb{R}^n)$, where $v = \varphi'(0) \in \mathbb{R}^n$, for any $\varphi \in [\varphi]_p$. Let $\gamma_{v_p} : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}^n$ by

$$\gamma_{v_p}(t) = (p + tv) = (p^1 + tv^1, p^2 + tv^2, \dots, p^n + tv^n).$$

It follows by construction that γ_{v_p} is smooth, $\gamma_{v_p}(0) = p$, and

 $\gamma'_{v_p}(0) = v$. Thus $\gamma_{v_p} \sim_p \varphi$. In particular, we have $[\gamma_{v_p}]_p = [\varphi]_p = v_p \in T_p(\mathbb{R}^n)$. In fact, notice that γ_{v_p} is the straight line through p in the direction of v.

Now consider the map $T_p : \mathbb{R}^n \to T_p(\mathbb{R}^n)$, given by

$$T_p(v) = [\gamma_{v_v}]_p.$$

In other words, we defined the map T_p to send a vector $v \in \mathbb{R}^n$ to the **equivalence class of all smooth curves passing through** p **with velocity** v **at** p. Note that since γ_{v_p} has a 'dependency' on v, it follows that T_p is indeed a bijection.

We now get a vector space structure on $T_p(\mathbb{R}^n)$ from that of \mathbb{R}^n by letting T_p be a linear isomorphism, i.e. we set

$$a[\varphi]_p + b[\psi]_p = T_p \left(aT_p^{-1}([\varphi]_p) + bT_p^{-1}([\psi]_p) \right)$$

for all $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ and all $[\varphi]_p, [\psi]_p \in T_p(\mathbb{R}^n)$.

66 Note 8.1.3

Another way we can say the last line in the proof above is as follows: if $v_p, w_p \in T_p(\mathbb{R}^n)$ and $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$, then we define $av_p + bw_p = (av + bw)_p$.

In other words, looking at the tangent vectors at p is similar to looking at the tangents vectors at the origin 0.

66 Note 8.1.4

The fact that there is a canonical isomorphism between \mathbb{R}^n and the equivalence classes wrt \sim_p is a pheonomenon that is particular to \mathbb{R}^n .

For a k-dimensional submanifold M of \mathbb{R}^n , or more generally, for an abstract smooth k-dimensional manifold M, and a point $p \in M$, it is true that we can still define $T_p(M)$ to be the set of equivalence classes of curves wrt to some 'natural' equivalence relation. However, there is no canonical representation of each equivalence class, and so $T_p(M) \simeq \mathbb{R}^k$,

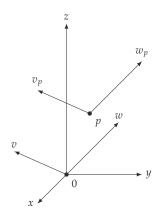


Figure 8.2: Canonical bijection from $T_{\nu}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ to \mathbb{R}^n

9.1 Derivations and Tangent Vectors

Recall the notion of a directional derivative.

■ Definition 32 (Directional Derivative)

Let $p, v \in \mathbb{R}^n$. Let $f: U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ be smooth, where U is an open set that contains p (i.e. an open nbd of p). The **directional derivative** of f at p in the direction of v, denoted $v_p f$, is defined as

$$v_p f = \lim_{t \to 0} \frac{f(p+tv) - f(p)}{t}.$$
 (9.1)

Remark 9.1.1

The above limit may or may not exist given an arbitrary f, p and v. However, since we're working exclusively with smooth functions, this limit will always exist for us.

66 Note 9.1.1

By definition, we may think of $v_p f \in \mathbb{R}$ as the instantaneous rate of change of f at the point p as we 'move in the direction of' the vector v.

Remark 9.1.2

In multivariable calculus, one may have seen this definition with the ad-

ditional condition that v is a unit vector. We do not have that restriction here.

Also, note that we have deliberately used the same notation v_p that we used for elements of $T_p(\mathbb{R}^n)$, which seems awkward, but it shall be clarified in \triangleright Corollary 23.

Example 9.1.1

In the special case of when $v = \hat{e}_i$, where \hat{e}_i is the *i*th standard basis vector. Then we have

$$(\hat{e}_i)_p f = \lim_{t \to 0} \frac{f(p + t\hat{e}_i) - f(p)}{t} = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^i}(p) = (f \circ \gamma_{v_p})'(p)$$

for the directional derivative of f at p in the \hat{e}_i direction. This is precisely the partial derivative of f in the x^i direction at the point $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$.

■ Theorem 21 (Linearity and Leibniz Rule for Directional Derivatives)

Let $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$, and let f, g be smooth real-valued functions defined on open neighbourhoods of p. Let $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$. Then

- 1. (Linearity) $v_p(af + bg) = av_p f + bv_p g$;
- 2. (Leibniz Rule / Product Rule) $v_p(fg) = f(p)v_pg + g(p)v_pf$.



Proven on A2Q2.

RECALL that given $p, v \in \mathbb{R}^n$, we denote γ_{v_p} as the curve $\gamma_{v_p}(t) = p + tv$, which is the straight line passing through p with constant velocity v. Thus we mmay rewrite Equation (9.1) as

$$v_p f = \lim_{t \to 0} \frac{f(\gamma_{v_p}(t)) - f(\gamma_{v_p}(0))}{t} = (f \circ \gamma_{v_p})'(0), \tag{9.2}$$

where $f\circ\gamma_{v_p}:\mathbb{R}\to\mathbb{R}$ is smooth as it is a composition of smooth functions.

Theorem 22 (Canonical Directional Derivative, Free From the Curve)

Suppose that $\varphi \sim_p \psi$ are two curves on \mathbb{R}^n . Let $f: U \to \mathbb{R}$ where U is an open neighbourhood of p. Then

$$(f \circ \varphi)'(0) = (f \circ \psi)'(0).$$

Proof

By the chain rule,

$$(f \circ \varphi)'(0) = (D(f \circ \varphi))_0 = (Df)_{\varphi(0)}(D\varphi)_0 = (Df)_{\varphi(0)}\varphi'(0),$$

and a similar expression holds for ψ . Our desired result follows from the definition of \sim_p .

Corollary 23 (Justification for the Notation $v_p f$)

Let $[\varphi]_p \in T_p \mathbb{R}^n$. It follows that

$$v_p f = (f \circ \gamma_{v_p})'(0) = (f \circ \varphi)'(0)$$

by Equation (9.2).

Remark 9.1.3

With that, we have established that tangent vectors give us directional derivatives in a way compatible with the characterization of $T_p\mathbb{R}^n$ as equivalence classes wrt \sim_p .

Now the fact that Equation (9.1) depends only on the values of f in some open neighbourhood of p motivates us towards the following

definition.

Let $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$. Let $f: U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ and $g: V \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ be smooth where U and V are both open neighbourhoods of p. We say that $f \sim_p g$ if $\exists W \subseteq U \cap V$ such that $f \upharpoonright_W = g \upharpoonright_W$. That is, $f \sim_p g$ iff f and g agree at all points sufficiently closde to p.

66 Note 9.1.2

It is clear from Equation (9.1) that if $f \sim_p g$, then f(p) = g(p) and $v_p f = v_p g$, i.e. f and g agree at p and all possible directional derivatives at p of f and g also agree with each other.

lacktriangleq Proposition 24 (\sim_p for Smooth Functions is an Equivalence Relation)

The relation \sim_p on the set of smooth real-valued functions defined on some open neighbourhood of p is an equivalence relation.

Exercise 9.1.1

Prove Proposition 24.

Of course, what else is there to talk about an equivalence relation if not for its equivalence class?

■ Definition 34 (Germ of Functions)

An equivalence class of \sim_p is called a *germ of functions* at p. The set of all such equivalence classes is denoted C_p^{∞} , called the *space of germs* at p.

66 Note 9.1.3

Suppose $f: U \to \mathbb{R}$, where U is an open neighbourhood of p. Then it is clear that $[f]_p = [f \upharpoonright_V]_p$ for any open neighbourhood V of p if $V \subseteq U$.

We can define the structure of a real vector space on C_p^{∞} as follows. Let $[f]_p, [g]_p \in C_p^{\infty}$, where the functions

$$f: U \to \mathbb{R}$$
 and $g: V \to \mathbb{R}$

represent $[f]_p$ and $[g]_p$, respectively. Also, let $a,b \in \mathbb{R}$. Then we define

$$a[f]_p + b[g]_p = [af + bg]_p,$$
 (9.3)

where af + bg is restricted to the open neighbourhood $U \cap V$ of p on which both f and g are defined.

We need to show that Equation (9.3) is well-defined. Well suppose $f \sim_p \tilde{f}$ and $g \sim_p \tilde{g}$. Then what we need to show is

$$(af + bg) \sim_{v} (a\tilde{f} + b\tilde{g}).$$

Since $f \sim_p \tilde{f}$ and $g \sim_p \tilde{g}$, we have that

$$\tilde{f}: \tilde{U} \to \mathbb{R}$$
 and $\tilde{g}: \tilde{V} \to \mathbb{R}$.

Then, in particular, there exists $W \subseteq U \cap \tilde{U}$ and $Y \subseteq V \cap \tilde{V}$ such that

$$f \upharpoonright_W = \tilde{f} \upharpoonright_W \text{ and } g \upharpoonright_Y = \tilde{g} \upharpoonright_Y.$$

Then $Z = W \cap Y$ is an open neighbourhood of p and thus we must have

$$af + bg = a\tilde{f} + b\tilde{g}$$

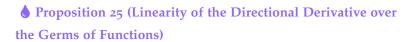
on *Z*. Thus Equation (9.3) is true and C_p^{∞} is indeed a vector space.

Further, we can even define a multiplication on C_p^{∞} by setting

$$[f]_p[g]_p = [fg]_p.$$
 (9.4)

Example 9.1.2

Check that Equation (9.4) is well-defined.



Let $v_p \in T_p \mathbb{R}^n$. Then the map $v_p : C_p^{\infty} \to \mathbb{R}$ defined by $[f]_p \mapsto v_p[f]_p = v_p f$ is well-defined. This map is also linear in the sense that

$$v_p(a[f]_p + b[g]_p) = av_p[f]_p + bv_p[g]_p.$$

Moreover, this map satisfies Leibniz's rule:

$$v_p([f]_p[g]_p) = f(p)v - p[g]_p + g(p)v_p[f]_p.$$

Proof

Our desired result follows almost immedaitely from Definition 33 and Theorem 21.

10 Lecture 10 Jan 28th

10.1 Derivations and Tangent Vectors (Continued)

Recall Corollary 23.

■ Definition 35 (Derivation)

A derivation at p is a linear map $\mathcal{D}:C_p^\infty\to\mathbb{R}$ satisfying the additional property that

$$\mathcal{D}([f]_p[g]_p) = f(p)\mathcal{D}[g]_p + g(p)\mathcal{D}[f]_p.$$

Remark 10.1.1

\Diamond Proposition 25 tells us that any tangent vector $v_p \in T_p \mathbb{R}^n$ is a derivation, so the set of derivations is not trivial.

♦ Proposition 26 (Set of Derivations as a Space)

Let Der_p be the set of all derivations at p. Then this is a subset of the vector space $L(C_p^{\infty}, \mathbb{R})$. In fact, Der_p is a linear subspace.

Proof

We shall prove this in A2Q3.

This is likely surprising seeing that we just introduced yet another definition but there are actually no other derivations at p aside from the tangent vectors at p. In fact, any derivation must be a directional differentiation wrt to some tangent vector $v_p \in T_p\mathbb{R}^n$. Before we can show this, observe the following.

First Let us describe a tangent vector v_p as a derivation at p in terms of the standard basis. Let $\mathcal{B} = \{\hat{e}_1, \dots, \hat{e}_n\}$ be the standard basis of \mathbb{R}^n . Then

$$\{(\hat{e}_1)_p,\ldots,(\hat{e}_n)_p\}$$

is a basis of $T_p\mathbb{R}^n$, which is called the standard basis of $T_p\mathbb{R}^n$. It is the image of \mathcal{B} under the canonical isomorphism

$$T_p: \mathbb{R}^n \to T_p \mathbb{R}^n$$
.

Recall from Example 9.1.1 that

$$(\hat{e}_k)_p f = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^k}(p).$$

As a linear map, we can write

$$(\hat{e}_k)_p = \frac{\partial}{\partial x^k} \Big|_p. \tag{10.1}$$

Let $v\in\mathbb{R}^n$ be expressed as $v=v^i\hat{e}_i$, in terms of the standard basis. By the chain rule, we have

$$v_p f = (f \circ \gamma_{v_p})'(0) = (D f)_{\gamma_{v_p}(0)} (D v_p)_0$$
$$= (df)_p v = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^i} (p) v^i = v^i \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} \Big|_{v_p} f.$$

From Equation (10.1), we can write the above as

$$v_p = v^i(\hat{e}_i)_p,$$

which we see is indeed the image of $v=v^i\hat{e}_i$ under the linear isomorphism T_p . Henceforth, we will often express tangent vectors at p in the above form, using linear combinations of the operators $(\hat{e}_i)_p = \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i}\Big|_p$.

Second Consider the smooth function $x^j : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ given by

$$x^j(q) = q^j$$
,

for all $q = (q^1, ..., q^n) \in \mathbb{R}^n$. So as a function of $x^1, ..., x^n$ we have

$$x^{j}(x^{1},...,x^{n}) = x^{j},$$
 (10.2)

which is smooth. Let $v_p = v^i \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} \Big|_p$. Then

$$v_p x^j = v^i \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} \Big|_{v} x^j = v^i \delta_i^j = v^j.$$

Thus, we deduced that

$$v_p = v^i \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} \Big|_{v'}$$
, where $v^i = v_p x^i$. (10.3)

Remark 10.1.2

Compare Equation (10.3) and Equation (1.1) and notice the similarity of their v^i 's. We shall look into why this is the case later on.

Lemma 27 (Derivations Annihilates Constant Functions)

Let \mathcal{D}_p be a derivation at p. Then \mathcal{D} annihilates constant functions, i.e. if $f(q) = c \in \mathbb{R}$ for all $q \in \mathbb{R}^n$, then $\mathcal{D}_p f = 0$.

Proof

First, consider the constant function $1: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ given by $q \mapsto 1$. Note that $1 \cdot 1 = 1$. By Leibniz's Rule, we have

$$\mathcal{D}_p(1) = \mathcal{D}_p(1 \cdot 1) = 1(p)\mathcal{D}_p 1 + 1(p)\mathcal{D}_p 1 = 2\mathcal{D}_p(1).$$

It follows that $\mathcal{D}_p(1) = 0$.

Now let f be a constant function. Then f=c1 for some $c\in\mathbb{R}$. It follows by linearity that

$$\mathcal{D}_p f = \mathcal{D}_p (c1) = c \mathcal{D}_p 1 = 0.$$

Theorem 28 (Derivations are Tangent Vectors)

Let \mathcal{D}_p be a derivation at p. Then $\mathcal{D}_p = v_p$ for some $v_p \in T_p \mathbb{R}^n$. Consequently, $\mathrm{Der}_p = T_p \mathbb{R}^n$.

Proof

Note that if there exists a v_p such that $\mathcal{D}_p = v_p$, then we must have $v_p = v^i \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} \Big|_p$ with coefficients

$$v^i = v_p x^j = \mathcal{D}_p x^j.$$

In particular, we can show that

$$\mathcal{D}_p = (\mathcal{D}_p x^i) \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} \Big|_p.$$

Let f be a smooth function defined in an open neighbourhood of p. By the **integral form of Taylor's Theorem**, for $x = (x^1, ..., x^n)$ sufficiently close to p, we can write

$$f(x) = f(p) + \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^i} \Big|_{p}^{(x^i - p^i)} + g_i(x)(x^i - p^i),$$

where the functions $g_i(x)$ satisfy $g_i(p) = 0$. More succinctly,

$$f = f(p) + \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^i} \Big|_p (x^i - p^i) + g_i \cdot (x^i - p^i), \tag{10.4}$$

where x^i is the function $x^i(x) = x^i$ as in Equation (10.2), and p^i and f(p) are constant functions. Apply \mathcal{D}_p to Equation (10.4). By the linearity and Leibniz's rule, both of which are satisfied by \mathcal{D}_p , and

Lemma 27, we get

$$\begin{split} \mathcal{D}_{p}f &= \mathcal{D}_{p} \left(f(p) + \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^{i}} \Big|_{p} (x^{i} - p^{i}) + g_{i} \cdot (x^{i} - p^{i}) \right) \\ &= 0 + \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^{i}} \Big|_{p} \mathcal{D}_{p} (x^{i} - p^{i}) + \mathcal{D}_{p} (g_{i} \cdot (x^{i} - p^{i})) \\ &= \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^{i}} \Big|_{p} (\mathcal{D}_{p} x^{i} + 0) + g_{i}(p) \mathcal{D}_{p} (x^{i} - p^{i}) + (x^{i} - p^{i})(p) \mathcal{D}_{p} (g_{i}) \\ &= (\mathcal{D}_{p} x^{i}) \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i}} \Big|_{p} f + 0 + 0 = \left((\mathcal{D}_{p} x^{i}) \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i}} \Big|_{p} \right) f. \end{split}$$

Since f was arbitrary, it follows that $\mathcal{D}_p = (\mathcal{D}_p x^i) \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} \Big|_{p'}$, which is what we desired.

Remark 10.1.3

From Section 7.3 and Section 9.1, a tangent vector $v_p \in T_p \mathbb{R}^n$ can be considered in any one of the following three ways:

- 1. as a vector $v \in \mathbb{R}^n$, enamating from the point $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$;
- 2. as a unique equivalence class of curves through p;
- 3. as a unique derivation at p.

The three different viewpoints are useful in their own ways, and we will be alternating between these ideas as we go forward.

10.2 Smooth Vector Fields

The idea of a vector field on \mathbb{R}^n is the assignment of a tangent vector at p for every $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$. A smooth vector field is where we attach these tangent vectors to every point in a smoothly varying way.

■ Definition 36 (Tangent Bundle)

The **tangent bundle** of \mathbb{R}^n is defined as

$$T\mathbb{R}^n = \bigcup_{p \in \mathbb{R}^n} T_p \mathbb{R}^n.$$

Remark 10.2.1

For us, the tangent bundle is just a set, but it is a very important mathematical object which shall be studied in later courses (PMATH 465).

■ Definition 37 (Vector Field)

A vector field on \mathbb{R}^n is a map $X : \mathbb{R}^n \to T\mathbb{R}^n$ such that $X(p) \in T_p\mathbb{R}^n$ for all $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$. We shall always denote X(p) by X_p .

LET $\{\hat{e}_1, \ldots, \hat{e}_n\}$ be the standard basis of \mathbb{R}^n . We have seen that $\{(\hat{e}_1)_p, \ldots, (\hat{e}_n)_p\}$ is a basis of $T_p\mathbb{R}^n$. We can think of each \hat{e}_i as a vector field, where $\hat{e}_i(p) = (\hat{e}_i)_p$. We call these the **standard vector** fields on \mathbb{R}^n . Recall that we wrote that

$$(\hat{e}_k) = \frac{\partial}{\partial x^k},\tag{10.5}$$

which means that $(\hat{e}_k)_p = \frac{\partial}{\partial x^k}\Big|_p$. Henceforth, we shall write the standard vector fields on \mathbb{R}^n as $\left\{\frac{\partial}{\partial x^1},\ldots,\frac{\partial}{\partial x^n}\right\}$.

Now it follows that for any vector field X on \mathbb{R}^n , since $X_p \in T_p \mathbb{R}^n$, we can write

$$X_p = X^i(p) \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} \Big|_{p'}$$

where each $X^i: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$. More succinctly,

$$X = X^i \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i}$$
.

The functions $X^i: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ are called the **component functions of** the vector field X wrt the standard vector fields.

WE ARE now ready to define smoothness of a vector field.

■ Definition 38 (Smooth Vector Fields)

Let X be a vector field on \mathbb{R}^n . Then $X = X^i \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i}$ for some uniquely determined function $X^i : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$. We say that X is smooth if X^i is smooth

for every i. We write $X^i \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n)$.

Remark 10.2.2

In multivariable calculus, a smooth field on \mathbb{R}^n is a smooth map $X:\mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n$ given by

$$X(p) = (X^1(p), \dots, X^n(p)),$$

i.e. we could say that $X = (X^1, ..., X^n)$ is an n-tuple of smooth functions on \mathbb{R}^n .

Note that this view is particular to \mathbb{R}^n due to the canonical isomorphism between $T_p\mathbb{R}^n$ and \mathbb{R}^n for all $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$.

11.1 Smooth Vector Fields (Continued)

Let X be a vector field on \mathbb{R}^n , not necessarily smooth. For any $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$, we have that X_p is a derivation on smooth functions defined on an open neighbourhood of p. In particular, for any $f \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n)$, $X_p f \in \mathbb{R}$ is a scalar. Then we can define a function $Xf : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ by

$$(Xf)(p) = X_p f.$$

♦ Proposition 29 (Equivalent Definition of a Smooth Vector Field)

The vector field X on \mathbb{R}^n is smooth iff $Xf \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ for all $f \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n)$.

Proof

Let $X = X^i \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i}$. Then

$$(Xf)(p) = X_p f = X^i(p) = X^i(p) \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^i}\Big|_p.$$

It follows that $Xf: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ is $X^i \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^i}$. Now if X is smooth, then each of the $X^{j'}$ s is smooth, and in particular $X^i \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^i}$ is smooth for any smooth f. On the other hand, suppose Xf is smooth for any

smooth function f. Then, consider $f = x^j$, which is smooth. Then

$$Xf = X^i \frac{\partial x^j}{\partial x^i} = X^i \delta^j_i = X^j,$$

is a smooth function.

66 Note 11.1.1

This equivalent characterization of smoothness of vector fields is independent of any choice of basis of \mathbb{R}^n . Due to this, it is the natural definition of smoothness of vector fields on abstract smooth manifolds, where we cannot obtain a canonical basis for each tangent space.

Let $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ is open¹. We can define a smooth vector field on U to be an element $X = X^i \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i}$ where each $X^i \in C^{\infty}(U)$ is smooth. From Proposition 29, U is smooth iff $Xf \in C^{\infty}(U)$ for all $f \in C^{\infty}(U)$.

Hereafter, we shall assume that all our vector fields, regardless if it is on \mathbb{R}^n or some open subset $U \subset \mathbb{R}^n$, are smooth, even if we do not explicitly say that they are.

66 Note 11.1.2 (Notation)

We write $\Gamma(T\mathbb{R}^n)$ for the set of smooth vector fields on \mathbb{R}^n . More generally, we write $\Gamma(TU)$ for $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ open.

The set $\Gamma(TU)$ is a real vector space, where the structure is given by

$$(aX + bY)_v = aX_v + bY_v$$

for all $X, Y \in \Gamma(TU)$ and $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$. This is an **infinite-dimensional** ² real vector space.

Further, $\forall X \in \Gamma(TU)$ and $h \in C^{\infty}(U)$, hX is another smooth vector field on U: Let $X = X^i \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i}$. Then $hX = (hX^i) \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i}$, where hX^i is the

¹ Why do we need *U* to be open?

² Why?

product of elements of $C^{\infty}(U)$. Equivalently so,

$$(hX)_p = h(p)X_p.$$

We say that $\Gamma(TU)$ is a **module** over the ring ${}^3C^{\infty}(U)$.

³ Whatever this means here in Ring Theory.

Let *X* be a smooth vector field on *U*. Since X_p is a derivation on C_p^{∞} for all $p \in U$, it motivates us to the following definition.

\blacksquare Definition 39 (Derivation on C_p^{∞})

Let $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ be open. A **derivation** on $C^{\infty}(U)$ is a linear map $\mathcal{D}:$ $C^{\infty}(U) \to C^{\infty}(U)$ that satisfies Leibniz's rule:

$$\mathcal{D}(f \cdot g) = f \cdot (\mathcal{D}g) + g \cdot (\mathcal{D}f),$$

where $f \cdot g$ denotes the multiplication of functions in $C^{\infty}(U)$.

Clearly, given $X \in \Gamma(TU)$, X is a derivation on $C^{\infty}(U)$ since for each $p \in U$, we have linearity

$$(X(af + bg))(p) = X_{v}(af + bg) = aX_{v}f + bX_{v}g = a(Xf)(p) + b(Xg)(p),$$

and Leibniz's rule

$$(X(fg))(p) = X_p(fg) = f(p)X_pg + g(p)X_pf$$

= $(fX)_pg + (gX)_pf = (f(Xg) + g(Xf))(p).$

Furthermore, if \mathcal{D} is a derivation on $C^{\infty}(U)$, then we get that \mathcal{D} : $U \to \mathbb{R}$ by $p \to \mathcal{D}_p f = (\mathcal{D}f)(p)$, which is a derivative at p. It follows that $\mathcal{D}_p \in T_p \mathbb{R}^n$. Thus \mathcal{D} is a vector field, and since $\mathcal{D}f \in C^i nfty(U)$ for all $f \in C^{\infty}(U)$, from $\ref{Proposition 29}$, we have that \mathcal{D} is smooth. Hence the derivations on $C^{\infty}(U)$ are exactly the smooth vector fields on U.

11.2 Smooth 1-Forms

■ Definition 40 (Cotangent Spaces and Cotangent Vectors)

Let $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$. The **cotangent space** to \mathbb{R}^n at p is defined to be the dual space $(T_p\mathbb{R}^n)^*$ of $T_p\mathbb{R}^n$, which is denoted as $T_p^*\mathbb{R}^n$. An element $\alpha_p \in T_p^*\mathbb{R}^n$, which is a linear map $\alpha_p : T_p\mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$, is called a **cotangent** vector at p.

Remark 11.2.1

The idea of a smooth 1-form is that we want to attach a cotangent vector $\alpha_p \in T_p^* \mathbb{R}^n$ at every point $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$ in a smoothly varying manner.

Let

$$T^*\mathbb{R}^n = \bigcup_{p \in \mathbb{R}^n} T_p^* \mathbb{R}^n$$

be the union of all the cotangent spaces to \mathbb{R}^n . This is called the cotangent bundle of \mathbb{R}^{n-4} .

■ Definition 41 (1-Form on the Cotangent Bundle)

A 1-form α on \mathbb{R}^n is a map $\alpha : \mathbb{R}^n \to T^*\mathbb{R}^n$ such that $\alpha(p) \in T_p^*\mathbb{R}^n$ for all $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$. We will always define $\alpha(p)$ by α_p .

Let $\{\hat{e}_1,\ldots,\hat{e}_n\}$ be the standard basis of \mathbb{R}^n . Then $\{(\hat{e}_1)_p,\ldots,(\hat{e}_n)_p\}$ is a basis for $T_p\mathbb{R}^n$. For now, we shall denote the dual basis of $T_p^*\mathbb{R}^n$ by $\{(\hat{e}^1)_p,\ldots,(\hat{e}^n)_p\}$. We may think of each \hat{e}^i as a 1-form, where $\hat{e}^i(p)=(\hat{e}^i)_p$. We shall call these the standard 1-forms on \mathbb{R}^n .

So for any 1-form α on \mathbb{R}^n , since $\alpha_p \in T_p^* \mathbb{R}^n$, we can write

$$\alpha_p = \alpha_i(p)(\hat{e}^i)_p$$
,

where each $\alpha_i : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ is a function. More succinctly,

$$\alpha = \alpha_i \hat{e}^i, \tag{11.1}$$

66 Note 11.2.1

This entire part is similar to our construction of smooth vector fields plus the stuff that we learned in Lecture 3 on k-forms.

⁴ Again, for us, this is just a set. We shall see this again in PMATH 465.

for some uniquely determined functions $\alpha_i : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$, where Equation (11.1) means that $\alpha_p = \alpha_i(p)(\hat{e}^i)_p$. The functions $\alpha_i : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ are called the component functions of the 1-form α wrt the standard 1-forms.

With that, we can define smoothness on 1-forms. Again, we will then find an equivalent definition that does not depend on a basis.

Definition 42 (Smooth 1-Forms)

We say that a 1-form α on \mathbb{R}^n is smooth if the component functions $\alpha_i:\mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ given in Equation (11.1) are all smooth functions, i.e. each $\alpha_i \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n).$

Let α be a 1-form on \mathbb{R}^n , not necessarily smooth. Then for any $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$, we know that $\alpha_p \in L(T_p\mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R})$. Thus for any vector field Xon \mathbb{R}^n not necessarily smooth, $\alpha_p(X_p) \in \mathbb{R}$ is a scalar. We can then define a function $\alpha X : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ by

$$(\alpha(X))(p) = \alpha_p(X_p). \tag{11.2}$$

♦ Proposition 30 (Equivalent Definition for Smoothness of 1-

The 1-form α on \mathbb{R}^n is smooth iff $\alpha(X) \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ for all $X \in \Gamma(T\mathbb{R}^n)$.

Proof

First, let $X = X^i \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} = X^i \hat{e}_i$ and $\alpha = \alpha_j \hat{e}^j$. Then we have

$$(\alpha(X))(p) = \alpha_p(X_p) = (\alpha_j(p)(\hat{e}^j)_p)(X^i(p)(\hat{e}_i)_p)$$
$$= \alpha_j(p)X^i(p)(\hat{e}^j)_p(\hat{e}_i)_p$$
$$= \alpha_j(p)X^i(p)\delta_i^j = \alpha_i(p)X^i(p).$$

Since p was arbitrary, we have

$$\alpha(X) = \alpha_i X^i. \tag{11.3}$$

Suppose that α is smooth, i.e. α_i is smooth. Then for any smooth vector field X, $\alpha_i X^i$ is smooth.

Conversely, if $\alpha(X)$ is smooth for any smooth X. Then in particular, if $X=\frac{\partial}{\partial x^j}$, It follows that $X^i=\delta^i_j$ since $X=X^i\frac{\partial}{\partial x^i}$. Then $\alpha(X)=\alpha_iX^i=\alpha_i\delta^i_j=\alpha_j$ is smooth.

Remark 11.2.2

Again, we see that this characterization is independent of the choice of basis.

66 Note 11.2.2

In the last step of the proof for \triangleleft Proposition 30, we observe that if $X = \hat{e}_i$ is the i^{th} standard vector field on \mathbb{R}^n . Then

$$X = X^{j} \hat{e}_{j} = X^{j} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{j}}$$

where $X^j = \delta^i_j$. Then if $\alpha = \alpha_k \hat{e}^k$ is a 1-form, we have that $\alpha(X) = \alpha(\hat{e}_i) = \alpha_i$, i.e.

$$\alpha = \alpha_i \hat{e}^j$$
, where $\alpha_i = \alpha(\hat{e}_i) = \alpha\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x^i}\right)$ (11.4)

Note that the above is a 'parameterized version' of Equation (1.1), where the coefficients are smooth functions on \mathbb{R}^n .

If $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ is open, we can define a smooth 1-form on U to be an element $\alpha = \alpha_i \hat{c}^i$ where $\alpha_i \in C^{\infty}(U)$ is smooth. We require U to be open to be able to define smoothness⁵ at all points of U. Proposition 30 generalizes to say that a 1-form on U is smooth iff $\alpha(X) \in C^{\infty}(U)$ for all $X \in \Gamma(TU)$.

⁵ Probably a similar question, but why?

We shall write $\Gamma(T^*\mathbb{R}^n)$ for the set of smooth 1-forms on \mathbb{R}^n and more generally $\Gamma(T^*U)$ for te set of smooth 1-forms on U. The set $\Gamma(T^*U)$ is a real vector space, where the vector space structure is given by

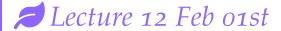
$$(a\alpha + b\beta)_p = a\alpha_p + b\beta_p$$

for all $\alpha, \beta \in \Gamma(T^*U)$ and $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$. Again, this is an **infinitedimensional** real vector space. Moreover, for $\alpha \in \Gamma(T^*U)$ and $h \in C^{\infty}(U)$, $h\alpha$ is another smooth 1-form on U, given as follows:

Let $\alpha = \alpha_i \hat{e}^i$. Then $h\alpha = (h\alpha_i)\hat{e}^i$, where $h\alpha_i$ is the product of elements of $C^{\infty}(U)$. Equivalently so

$$(h\alpha)_p = h(p)\alpha_p.$$

We say that $\Gamma(T^*U)$ is a **module** over the ring $C^{\infty}(U)$.



12.1 Smooth 1-Forms (Continued)

Given a smooth function f on U, there is a way for us to obtain a 1-form on U:

\blacksquare Definition 43 (Exterior Derivative of f (1-form))

Let $f \in C^{\infty}(U)$. We define $df \in \Gamma(T^*U)$ by

$$(df)(X) = Xf \in C^{\infty}(U)$$

for all $X \in \Gamma(TU)$. That is, for all $p \in U$, we have $(df)_p(X_p) = (Xf)_p = X_p f$. This one form is called the exterior derivative of f.

66 Note 12.1.1

It is clear that $(df)_p: T_p\mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ is linear, since

$$(df)_p(aX_p + bY_p) = (aX_p + bY_p)f = aX_pf + bY_pf$$
$$= a(df)_p(X_p) + b(df)_p(Y_p).$$

Also, df is smooth since (df)(X) = Xf is smooth for all smooth X.

If $f \in C^{\infty}(U)$, then $f : U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ is smooth, so its **Jacobian** (or **differential**) at $p \in U$ has already been defined and was denoted $(df)_p$. It is linear from \mathbb{R}^n to \mathbb{R} , which is representative by a $1 \times n$

matrix. Of course, we need to clarify why we claimed that df is a Jacobian.

♦ Proposition 31 (Exterior Derivative as the Jacobian)

Under the canonical isomorphism between $T_p\mathbb{R}^n$ and \mathbb{R}^n , the exterior derivative $(df)_p:T_p\mathbb{R}^n\to\mathbb{R}$ of f at p and the differential $(Df)_p:\mathbb{R}^n\to\mathbb{R}$ coincide. Moreover, wrt the standard 1-forms on \mathbb{R}^n , we have

$$df = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^i} \hat{e}^i. \tag{12.1}$$

Proof

For the 1-form df, we have

$$(df)_p(\hat{e}_i)_p = (\hat{e}_i)_p f = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^i}\Big|_{p'}$$

so by Equation (11.4), we have

$$df = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^i} \hat{e}^i$$
,

which is Equation (12.1).

Now the differential $(D f)_p : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ is the $1 \times n$ matrix

$$(Df)_p = \left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial x^1}\Big|_p \quad \cdots \quad \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^n}\Big|_p\right).$$

Thus $(Df)_p(\hat{e}_i)_p = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^i}\Big|_p$, so as an element of $(\mathbb{R}^n)^*$, we can write $(Df)_p = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^i}\Big|_p(\hat{e}^i)_p$. Since T_p is an isomorphism from \mathbb{R}^n to $T_p\mathbb{R}^n$ taking \hat{e}_i to $(\hat{e}_i)_p$, the dual map $(T_p)^*$ is an isomorphism from $T_p^*\mathbb{R}^n \to (\mathbb{R}^n)^*$, taking $(\hat{e}^i)_p$ to \hat{e}_i . Thus we observe that

$$(df)_p: T_p^*\mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$$
 at p

is brought to the same basis as

$$(Df)_p: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$$
 at p ,

which is what we needed to show.

Now consider the smooth functions x^j on \mathbb{R}^n . We obtain a 1-form dx^{j} , which is expressible as $dx^{j} = \alpha_{i}\hat{e}^{i}$ for some smooth functions α_{i} on \mathbb{R}^n . By Equation (11.4), we have $\alpha_i = (dx^j)(\frac{\partial}{\partial x^i}) = \frac{\partial x^j}{\partial x^i} = \delta_i^j$. So $dx^j = \delta_i^j \hat{e}^i = \hat{e}^j$. We have thus showed that

$$dx^{j} = \hat{e}^{j} \text{ for all } j \in \{1, \dots, n\}.$$
 (12.2)

Equation (12.2) tells us that the standard 1-forms \hat{e}^j on \mathbb{R}^n are given by the exterior derivatives of the standard coordinate functions x^{j} , and consequently the action of $\hat{e}^{j} = dx^{j}$ on a vector field X is by $\hat{e}^{j}(X) = (dx^{j})(X) = Xx^{j}$. Thus from hereon, we shall always write the standard 1-forms on \mathbb{R}^n as $\{dx^1, \dots, dx^n\}$.

So by putting Equation (12.1) and Equation (12.2) together, we obtain the familiar

$$df = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^i} dx^i, \tag{12.3}$$

which is the 'differential' of f from multivariable calculus that is usually not as rigourously defined in earlier courses.

WE ARE NOW equipped with nice interpretations of the standard vector fields and standard 1-forms on \mathbb{R}^n . From Equation (10.5), we know that standard vector fields are also partial differential operators $\frac{\partial}{\partial x^i}$ on $C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n)$, where

$$\hat{e}_i f = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^i},$$

and Equation (12.2) tells us the standard 1-forms should be regarded as 1-forms dx^{j} , whose action on a vector field X is the derivation of X on the function x^{j} . In other words,

$$\hat{e}^j(X) = (dx^j)(X) = Xx^j.$$

Notice that if $X = \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i}$,

$$(dx^j)\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x^j}\right) = \frac{\partial x^j}{\partial x^i} = \delta^j_i,$$

which gives us that at every point $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$, the basis $\{(\hat{e}^1)_p, \dots, (\hat{e}^n)_p\}$ of $T_p^*\mathbb{R}^n$ is the **dual basis** of the basis $\{(\hat{e}_1)_p, \dots, (\hat{e}_n)_p\}$ of $T_p\mathbb{R}^n$.

12.2 Smooth Forms on \mathbb{R}^n

We shall continue the same game and define a smooth *k*-forms.

\blacksquare Definition 44 (Space of *k*-Forms on \mathbb{R}^n)

Let $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$ and $1 \le k \le n$. The space $\Lambda^k(T_p^*\mathbb{R}^n)$ is defined as the **space** of k-forms on \mathbb{R}^n at p.

Remark 12.2.1

If k = 0, we before, we define $\Lambda^0(T_p^*\mathbb{R}^n) = \mathbb{R}$.

66 Note 12.2.1

For any element $\eta_p \in \Lambda(T_p^*\mathbb{R}^n)$, η_p is k-linear and skew-symmetric, i.e.

$$\eta_p: \underbrace{(T_p\mathbb{R}^n) \times \ldots \times (T_p\mathbb{R}^n)}_{k \text{ copies}} \to \mathbb{R}.$$

\blacksquare Definition 45 (k-Forms at p)

Elements of $\Lambda^k(T_p^*\mathbb{R}^n)$ are called k-forms at p.

Again, we want to attach an element $\eta_p \in \Lambda^k(T_p^*\mathbb{R}^n)$ at every $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$, in a smoothly varying way. Since $\Lambda^0(T_p^*\mathbb{R}^n) = \mathbb{R}$, a 0-form on \mathbb{R}^n is a smoothly varying assignment of a **real number** to every $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$, i.e. a 0-form on \mathbb{R}^n is a very familiar object: they are just **smooth functions** on \mathbb{R}^n .

For
$$1 \le k \le n$$
, let $\Lambda^k(T^*\mathbb{R}^n) = \bigcup_{p \in \mathbb{R}^n} \Lambda^k(T^*_p\mathbb{R}^n)$, which is called

the bundle of k-forms on \mathbb{R}^n . For us, this is just a set.

E Definition 46 (k-Form on \mathbb{R}^n)

Let $1 \le k \le n$. A k-form η on \mathbb{R}^n is a map $\eta : \mathbb{R}^n \to \Lambda^k(T^*\mathbb{R}^n)$ such that $\eta(p) \in \Lambda^k(T_v^*\mathbb{R}^n)$ for all $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$. We will always denote $\eta(p)$ by η_p .

Recall from our discussions in Section 10.2 and Section 11.2,

$$\left\{ \frac{\partial}{\partial x^1} \Big|_{p'}, \dots, \frac{\partial}{\partial x^n} \Big|_{p} \right\}$$

is the standard basis of $T_{v}\mathbb{R}^{n}$, with dual basis

$$\left\{ dx^1 \Big|_p, \dots, dx^n \Big|_p \right\}$$

if $T_p^*\mathbb{R}^n$. Then by **PTheorem** 10, the set

$$\left\{ dx^{i_1} \Big|_p \wedge \ldots \wedge dx^{i_k} \Big|_p : 1 \le i_1 < \ldots < i_k \le n \right\}$$

is a basis for $\Lambda^k(T_p^*\mathbb{R}^n)$. We can then define *k*-forms $dx^{i_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge dx^{i_k}$ on \mathbb{R}^n by

$$(dx^{i_1}\wedge\ldots\wedge if\,dx^{i_k})_p=dx^{i_1}_p\wedge\ldots\wedge dx^{i_k}_p.$$

We shall call these the **standard** k-**forms** on \mathbb{R}^n .

Then for any *k*-form η on \mathbb{R}^n , since $\eta_p \in \Lambda^k(T_p^*\mathbb{R}^n)$, we can write

$$\eta_{p} = \sum_{j_{1} < \dots < j_{k}} \eta_{j_{1}, \dots, j_{k}}(p) dx^{j_{1}} \Big|_{p} \wedge \dots \wedge dx^{j_{k}} \Big|_{p}$$

$$= \frac{1}{k!} \eta_{j_{1}, \dots, j_{k}}(p) dx^{j_{1}} \Big|_{p} \wedge \dots \wedge dx^{j_{k}} \Big|_{p} \tag{12.4}$$

where each $\eta_{j_1,...,j_k}:\mathbb{R}^n\to\mathbb{R}$ is a function. More succinctly,

$$\eta = \sum_{j_1 < \dots < j_k} \eta_{j_1, \dots, j_k} \, dx^{j_1} \wedge \dots \wedge dx^{j_k} = \frac{1}{k!} \eta_{j_1, \dots, j_k} \, dx^{j_1} \wedge \dots \wedge dx^{j_k}, \quad (12.5)$$

for some uniquely determined functions $\eta_{j_1,...,j_k}: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$, which are skew-symmetric in their k indices j_1, \ldots, j_k . The functions η_{j_1, \ldots, j_k} : $\mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ are called the **component functions** of the *k*-form η with

respect to the standard *k*-forms. We can now give our first definition of smoothness.

\blacksquare Definition 47 (Smooth *k*-Forms on \mathbb{R}^n)

We say that a k-form η on \mathbb{R}^n is **smooth** if the component functions $\eta_{j_1,...,j_k} : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ as defined in Equation (12.5) are all smooth funtions. In other words, each $\eta_{j_1,...,j_k} \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n)$.

66 Note 12.2.2

A smooth k-form is also called a differential k-form, but we will not be using this terminology in this course.

Let η be a k-form that is not necessarily smooth. Then for any $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$, we know

$$\eta_p: \underbrace{(T_p\mathbb{R}^n) \times \ldots \times (T_p\mathbb{R}^n)}_{k \text{ copies}} \to \mathbb{R}.$$

So if X_1, \ldots, X_k are arbitrary vector fields on \mathbb{R}^n that are not necessarily smooth, we get a scalar

$$\eta_p((X_1)_p,\ldots,(X_k)_p) \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Thus we can define a function $\eta(X_1, ..., X_k) : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ by

$$(\eta(X_1,\ldots,X_k))(p) = \eta_p((X_1)_p,\ldots,(X_k)_p).$$
 (12.6)

♦ Proposition 32 (Equivalent Definition of Smothness of *k*-Forms)

The k-form η on \mathbb{R}^n is smooth iff $\eta(X_1, ..., X_k) \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ for all $X_1, ..., X_k \in \Gamma(T\mathbb{R}^n)$.

Proof

For $l=1,\ldots,k$, write $X_l=X_l^{l_i}\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{l_i}}$, and $\eta=\frac{1}{k!}\eta_{j_1,\ldots,j_k}dx^{j_1}\wedge\ldots\wedge dx^{j_k}$. Then with Equation (12.4) and Equation (4.2), we have that

$$(\eta(X_1,\ldots,X_k))(p) = \eta_p((X_1)_p,\ldots,(X_k)_p)$$

$$= \eta_p\left(X_1^{l_1}(p)\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{l_1}}\Big|_p,\ldots,X_k^{l_k}(p)\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{l_k}}\Big|_p\right)$$

$$= X_l^{l_1}(p)\ldots X_k^{l_k}(p)\eta_p\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{l_1}}\Big|_p,\ldots,\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{l_k}}\Big|_p\right)$$

$$= X_1^{l_1}(p)\ldots X_k^{l_k}(p)\eta_{l_1,\ldots,l_k}(p).$$

Since this holds for an arbitrary $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$, we have that

$$\eta(X_1, \dots, X_k) = X_1^{l_1} \dots X_k^{l_k} \eta_{l_1, \dots, l_k}. \tag{12.7}$$

So the function $\eta(X_1, ..., X_k) : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ is in fact $X_1^{l_1} ... X_k^{l_k} \eta_{l_1,...,l_k}$.

Suppose that η is smooth. Then each of the $\eta_{j_1,...,j_k}$ is smooth, and so in particular $X_1^{l_1} \dots X_k^{l_k} \eta_{l_1,\dots,l_k}$ is smooth for smooth vector fields X_1, \ldots, X_k .

Conversely, sps $\eta(X_1, ..., X_k)$ is smooth for any smooth $X_1, ..., X_k$. Then consider $X_l^{l_i} = \delta^{l_i j_i}$. Then

$$\eta(X_1,...,X_k) = \eta_{l_1,...,l_k} \delta^{l_1 j_1} ... \delta^{l_k j_k} = \eta_{j_1,...,j_k}$$

is smooth.

Remark 12.2.2

The proof above provides us a very useful observation. Let $X_i = \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{j_i}}$ be the j_i^{th} standard vector field on \mathbb{R}^n . Then $X = X_i^{l_i} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{l_i}}$ where $X_i^{l_i} = \delta^{l_i j_i}$. Then if $\eta = \frac{1}{k!} \eta_{j_1, \dots, j_k} dx^{j_1} \wedge \dots \wedge dx^{j_k}$ is a k-form, we have that $\eta(X_1, \dots, X_k) =$ $\eta_{j_1,...,j_k}$. In other words,

$$\eta = \frac{1}{k!} \eta_{j_1, \dots, j_k} dx^{j_1} \wedge \dots \wedge dx^{j_k} \text{ where } \eta_{j_1, \dots, j_k} = \eta \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{j_1}}, \dots, \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{j_k}} \right)$$
(12.8)

Now if $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ is open, we define a smooth *k*-form on *U* to be an element $\eta = \frac{1}{k!} \eta_{j_1,...,j_k} dx^{j_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge dx^{j_k}$, where $\eta_{j_1,...,j_k} \in C^{\infty}(U)$ is smooth. We need U to be able to define smoothness at all points of U. Again, it is clear that \P Proposition 32 generalizes to say that K-forms on U are smooth iff $\eta(X_1, \ldots, X_k) \in C^{\infty}(U)$ for all $X_1, \ldots, X_k \in \Gamma(TU)$.

We shall write $\Gamma(\Lambda^k(T^*\mathbb{R}^n))$ for the set of smooth k-forms on \mathbb{R}^n , and more generally $\Gamma(\Lambda^k(T^*U))$ for the set of smooth k-forms on U. The set $\Gamma(\Lambda^k(T^*U))$ is a real vector space, where the vector space structure is given by

$$(a\eta + b\zeta)_p = a\eta_p + b\zeta_p$$

for all $\eta, \zeta \in \Gamma(\Lambda^k(T^*U))$ and $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$. Again, this space is **infinite-dimensional**. Moreover, given $\eta \in \Gamma(\Lambda^k(T^*U))$ and $h \in C^\infty(U)$, $h\eta$ is another smooth k-form on U, defined as follows:

Let

$$\eta = \frac{1}{k!} \eta_{j_1,\ldots,j_k} dx^{j_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge dx^{j_k}.$$

Then

$$h\eta = \frac{1}{k!}(h\eta_{j_1,\ldots,j_k})\,dx^{j_1}\wedge\ldots\wedge dx^{j_k},$$

where $h\eta_{j_1,...,j_k}$ is the product of elements of $C^{\infty}(U)$. Or equivalently, we can define

$$(h\eta)_p = h(p)\eta_p. \tag{12.9}$$

We say that $\Gamma(\Lambda^k(T^*U))$ is a **module** over the ring $C^{\infty}(U)$. Also, note that if k = 0, we have $\Gamma(\Lambda^0(T^*U)) = C^{\infty}(U)$.

66 Note 12.2.3 (Notation)

To minimize notation, we shall write

$$\Omega^k(U) = \Gamma(\Lambda^k(T * U))$$

to be the space of smooth k-forms on U. Note that $\Omega^0(U) = C^{\infty}(U)$.



Wedge Product of Smooth Forms

We can now define wedge products on these smooth *k*-forms.

■ Definition 48 (Wedge Product of *k*-Forms)

Let $\eta \in \Omega^k(U)$ and let $\zeta \in \Omega^l(U)$. Then the wedge product $\eta \wedge \zeta$ is an element of $\Omega^{k+l}(U)$ defined by

$$(\eta \wedge \zeta)_p = \eta_p \wedge \zeta_p.$$

By the properties of wedge products on forms at p for any $p \in U$, we may generalize the properties that were shown on page Remark 5.2.1, which shall be shown here:

66 Note 13.1.1

Let $\eta, \zeta \in \Omega^k(U)$ and $\rho \in \Omega^l(U)$. Let $f, g \in C^{\infty}(U)$. Then

$$(f\eta + g\zeta) \wedge \rho = f\eta \wedge \rho + g\zeta \wedge \rho.$$

Similarly,

$$\rho \wedge (f\eta + g\zeta) = f\rho \wedge \eta + g\rho \wedge \zeta.$$

These show that the wedge product of smooth forms is linear in each argument.

Further, we have that the wedge product of smooth forms is associative:

we have

$$(\zeta \wedge \eta) \wedge \rho = \zeta \wedge (\eta \wedge \rho),$$

for any smooth forms η , ζ , ρ of any degree.

Finally, wedge product of smooth forms is also skew-commutative:

$$\zeta \wedge \eta = (-1)^{|\eta||\zeta|} \eta \wedge \zeta. \tag{13.1}$$

In particular, if $|\eta|$ *is odd, then Equation* (13.1) *says that* $\eta \wedge \eta = 0$.

These properties makes it easier to compute wedge products of smooth forms.

Example 13.1.1

Let $\eta = y dx + \sin z dy$ and $\zeta = x^3 dx \wedge dz$. Then we have

$$\eta \wedge \zeta = (y dx + \sin z dy) \wedge (x^3 dx \wedge dz)
= x^3 y dx \wedge dx \wedge dz + x^3 \sin z dy \wedge dx \wedge dz
= -x^3 \sin z dx \wedge dy \wedge dz.$$

13.2 Pullback of Smooth Forms

Recall that following Section 5.2 (wedge product of forms), we introduced pullback of forms (Section 5.3). We shall be introducing an analogue of pullbacks for smooth forms.

Let $k \ge 1$. From Section 5.3, if $S \in L(V < W)$, then $S^* : \Lambda^k(W^*) \to \Lambda^k(V^*)$ is an induced linear map that we called the pullback, defined by

$$(S^*\alpha)(v_1,\ldots,v_k) = \alpha(Sv_1,\ldots,Sv_k)$$
(13.2)

for all $\alpha \in \Lambda^k(W^*)$. There is, however, some preliminary results that we need to understand before generalizing the above.

Let $F: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$ be a smooth map, $x = (x^1, ..., x^n)$ for coordinates on the domain \mathbb{R}^n and $y = (y^1, ..., y^m)$ for coordinates on the codomain \mathbb{R}^m . Thus for $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$, a basis for $T_v\mathbb{R}^n$ is given by

$$\mathcal{B} = \left\{ \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} \Big|_{p'}, \dots, \frac{\partial}{\partial x^m} \Big|_{p} \right\} \text{ and, for } q \in \mathbb{R}^m, \text{ a basis for } T_q \mathbb{R}^m \text{ is given by }$$

$$\mathcal{C} = \left\{ \frac{\partial}{\partial y^1} \Big|_{q'}, \dots, \frac{\partial}{\partial y^m} \Big|_{q} \right\}. \text{ We write } y = F(x) = (F^1(x), \dots, F^m(x)).$$

For any $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$, we have an induced linear map $(dF)_p : T_p \mathbb{R}^n \to$ $T_{F(p)}\mathbb{R}^m$, which we defined in A2. The definition shall be restated here. If $X_p = [\varphi]_p \in T_p \mathbb{R}^n$, then $(dF)_p X_p = [F \circ \varphi]_{F(p)}$. We showed that the $m \times n$ matrix for $(dF)_p$ wrt the bases \mathcal{B} and \mathcal{C} is $(DF)_p$, the Jacobian of *F* at *p*. That is,

$$(dF)_{p} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i}} \Big|_{p} = ((DF)_{p})_{i}^{j} \frac{\partial}{\partial y^{j}} \Big|_{F(p)} = \frac{\partial F^{j}}{\partial x^{i}} \Big|_{p} \frac{\partial}{\partial y^{j}} \Big|_{F(p)}.$$
(13.3)

The element $(dF)_p v_p \in T_{F(p)} \mathbb{R}^m$ is called the **pushforward** of the element $v_p \in T_p \mathbb{R}^n$ by the map F.

We can now talk about the pullback of smooth k-forms for $k \ge 1$ 1. Given an element $\eta_{F(p)} \in \Lambda^k(T^*_{F(p)}\mathbb{R}^m)$, we can pull it back by $(dF)_p \in L(T_p\mathbb{R}^n, T_{F(p)}\mathbb{R}^m)$ to an element $(dF)_p^*\eta_{F(p)} \in \Lambda^k(T_p^*\mathbb{R}^n)$ as in Equation (13.2), where we let $V = T_p \mathbb{R}^n$ and $W = T_{F(p)} \mathbb{R}^m$. In other words,

$$((dF)_p^* \eta_{F(p)})((X_1)_p, \dots, (X_k)_p) = \eta_{F(p)}((dF)_p(X_1)_p, \dots, (dF)_p(X_k)_p)$$
 for all $(X_1)_p, \dots, (X_k)_p \in T_p \mathbb{R}^n$.

Definition 49 (Pullback by F of a k-Form)

Let $F: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$ be a smooth map. Let η be a k-form on \mathbb{R}^m . The pullback by F of η is a k-form $F^*\eta$ on \mathbb{R}^n defined by $(F^*\eta)_p = (dF)_p^*\eta_{F(p)}$. Explicitly so, $F^*\eta$ is the k-form on \mathbb{R}^n defined by

$$(F^*\eta)_p((X_1)_p,\ldots,(X_k)_p)=\eta_{F(p)}((dF)_p(X_1)_p,\ldots,(dF)_p(X_k)_p).$$

♦ Proposition 33 (Pullbacks Preserve Smoothness)

The pullback by a smooth map $F: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$ takes smooth k-forms to smooth k-forms, i.e. if $\eta \in \Omega^k(\mathbb{R}^m)$, then $F^*\eta \in \Omega^k(\mathbb{R}^n)$.

Proof

It suffices to show that the functions

$$(F^*\eta)_{j_1,\ldots,j_k} = (F^*\eta)\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{j_1}},\ldots,\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{j_k}}\right)$$

are smooth on \mathbb{R}^n . By Equation (13.3), we have

$$(F^*\eta)_p \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{j_1}} \Big|_{p'}, \dots, \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{j_k}} \Big|_{p} \right)$$

$$= \eta_{F(p)} \left((dF)_p \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{j_1}} \Big|_{p'}, \dots, (dF)_p \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{j_k}} \Big|_{p} \right) \quad \therefore \text{ definition}$$

$$= \eta_{F(p)} \left(\frac{\partial F^{l_1}}{\partial x^{j_1}} \Big|_{p} \frac{\partial}{\partial y^{l_1}} \Big|_{F(p)'}, \dots, \frac{\partial F^{l_k}}{\partial x^{j_k}} \Big|_{p} \frac{\partial}{\partial y^{l_k}} \Big|_{F(p)} \right) \quad \therefore \text{ Equation (13.3)}$$

$$= \left(\frac{\partial F^{l_1}}{\partial x^{j_1}} \Big|_{p} \dots \frac{\partial F^{l_k}}{\partial x^{j_k}} \Big|_{p} \right) \eta_{F(p)} \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial y^{l_1}} \Big|_{F(p)'}, \dots, \frac{\partial}{\partial y^{l_k}} \Big|_{F(p)} \right) \quad \therefore \text{ linearity}$$

$$= \left(\frac{\partial F^{l_1}}{\partial x^{j_1}} \dots \frac{\partial F^{l_k}}{\partial x^{j_k}} \right) (p) \cdot \eta \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial y^{l_1}}, \dots, \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{j_k}} \right) (F(p)) \quad \therefore \text{ rewrite}$$

$$= \left(\frac{\partial F^{l_1}}{\partial x^{j_1}} \dots \frac{\partial F^{l_k}}{\partial x^{j_k}} \right) (\eta_{l_1,\dots,l_k} \circ F) \right) (p) \quad \therefore \text{ product of functions}$$

Since $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$ was arbitrary, we have

$$(F^*\eta)_{j_1,\ldots,j_k} = \frac{\partial F^{l_1}}{\partial x^{j_1}} \ldots \frac{\partial F^{l_k}}{\partial x^{j_k}} (\eta_{l_1,\ldots,l_k} \circ F).$$

By assumption, we have that η is smooth, and so since F is always assumed to be smooth, we have that $(F^*\eta)_{j_1,...,j_k}$ is smooth, as required.

♦ Proposition 34 (Different Linearities of The Pullback)

Let $F: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$ be smooth. Let $k,l \geq 1$. Let $\eta, \zeta \in \Omega^k(\mathbb{R}^m)$, $\rho \in \Omega^l(\mathbb{R}^m)$, and let $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$. Then

$$F^*(a\eta + b\zeta) = aF^*\eta + bF^*\zeta, \quad F^*(\eta \wedge \rho) = (F^*\eta) \wedge (F^*\rho).$$
 (13.4)

Proof



14.1 Pullback of Smooth Forms (Continued)

Up to this point, notice that our discussions have mostly been about $k \geq 1$. Notice that for k = 0, the **smooth** 0-forms are just smooth functions. It follows that if the pullback by a smooth map $F : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$ will map from $\Omega^0(\mathbb{R}^m)$ to $\Omega^0(\mathbb{R}^n)$, it is sensible that the definition of $F^*h = h \circ F$ for any $h \in \Omega^0(\mathbb{R}^m) = C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^m)$.

It goes without saying that $F^*h \in \Omega^0(\mathbb{R}^n) = C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n)$.

■ Definition 50 (Pullback of 0-forms)

Let $F: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$ be smooth. Let $h \in \Omega^0(\mathbb{R}^m)$. Then we define

$$F^*h = h \circ F \in \Omega^0(\mathbb{R}^n). \tag{14.1}$$

Lemma 35 (Linearity of the Pullback over the 0-form that is a Scalar)

Let $k \geq 1$. Let $h \in \Omega^0(\mathbb{R}^m)$ and $\eta \in \Omega^k(\mathbb{R}^m)$. Let $F : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$ be smooth. The

$$F^*(h\eta) = (F^*h)(F^*\eta).$$

Proof

Recall from Equation (12.9), we had $(h\eta)_q = h(q)\eta_q$ for any $q \in \mathbb{R}^m$.

It follows that

$$(F^*(h\eta))_p = (dF)_p^*(h\eta)_{F(p)} = (dF)_p^*(h(F(p))\eta_{F(p)})$$

$$= h(F(p))(dF)_p^*(\eta_{F(p)})$$

$$= (h \circ F)(p)(F^*\eta)_p$$

$$= ((F^*h)(F^*\eta))(p).$$

Thus we have $F^*(h\eta) = (F^*h)(F^*\eta)$.

This motivates the following definition.

■ Definition 51 (Wedge Product of a 0-form and *k*-form)

Let $h \in \Omega^{(\mathbb{R}^m)}$ and $\eta \in \Omega^k(\mathbb{R}^m)$, where $k \geq 1$. We define

$$h \wedge \eta = h\eta$$
.

66 Note 14.1.1

This definition is consistent with the identity $\alpha \wedge \beta = (-1)^{|\alpha||\beta|} \beta \wedge \alpha$, since the degree of h is 0, and so it commutes with all forms.

Corollary 36 (General Linearity of the Pullback)

Let $F: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$ be smooth. Let $k,l \geq 0$. Let $\eta, \xi \in \Omega^k(\mathbb{R}^m)$, $\rho \in \Omega^l(\mathbb{R}^m)$, and let $a,b \in \mathbb{R}$. Then

$$F^*(a\eta + b\xi) = aF^*\eta + bF^*\xi \quad F^*(\eta \wedge \rho) = (F^*\eta) \wedge (F^*\rho).$$

Proof

If k, l > 0, the statement is simply \bullet Proposition 34. If either one or both of k, l are 0, then the wedge product case follows from

Lemma 35, while the other follows from the properties

$$(ah + bg) \circ F = a(h \circ F) + b(g \circ F)$$

and

$$(hg) \circ F = (h \circ F)(g \circ F),$$

for any $g, h \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^m)$.

Before we begin considering examples, let us derive an explicit formula for the pullback.

66 Note 14.1.2

Consider the pullback of the standard 1-forms dy^1, \ldots, dy^m on \mathbb{R}^m . Then for $F: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$, $F^* dy^j$ is a smooth 1-form on \mathbb{R}^n , and it can hence be written as

$$F^* dy^j = A_i^j dx^i$$

for some smooth function A_i^j on \mathbb{R}^n . Observe that

$$(F^*\,dy^j)_p\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x^l}\Big|_p\right)=A^j_i(p)\,dx^i\Big|_p\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x^l}\Big|_p\right)=A^j_i(p)\delta^i_l=A^j_l(p).$$

By the definition of the pullback, we also have that

$$\begin{split} (F^* \, dy^j)_p \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x^l} \Big|_p \right) &= dy^l \Big|_{F(p)} \left((dF)_p \frac{\partial}{\partial x^l} \Big|_p \right) \\ &= dy^j \Big|_{F(p)} \left(\frac{\partial F^i}{\partial x^l} \Big|_p \frac{\partial}{\partial y^i} \Big|_{F(p)} \right) \\ &= \frac{\partial F^i}{\partial x^l} \Big|_p dy^j \Big|_{F(p)} \left(\partial y^i \frac{\partial}{\partial y^i} \Big|_{F(p)} \right) \\ &= \frac{\partial F^i}{\partial x^l} \Big|_p \delta^j_i = \frac{\partial F^j}{\partial x^l} \Big|_p. \end{split}$$

It follows that $A_l^j(p) = \frac{\partial F^j}{\partial x^l}\Big|_p$ for all $p \in \mathbb{R}^n$, which implies $A_l^j = \frac{\partial F^j}{\partial x^l}$. Therefore, we have that

$$F^* dy^j = \frac{\partial F^j}{\partial x^i} dx^i. \tag{14.2}$$

Following Corollary 36 and Equation (14.2), we have the following proposition.

♦ Proposition 37 (Explicit Formula for the Pullback of Smooth 1-forms)

Let $\alpha = \alpha_j dy^j$ be a smooth 1-form on \mathbb{R}^m , and let $F : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$ be smooth. Then $F^*\alpha$ is the smooth 1-form

$$F^*\alpha = (\alpha_j \circ F) \frac{\partial F^j}{\partial x^i} dx^i.$$

Corollary 38 (Commutativity of the Pullback and the Exterior Derivative on Smooth 0-forms)

Let $F: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$ be smooth. Let $h \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^m)$. Then $dh \in \Omega^1(\mathbb{R}^m)$ and $F^*(dh) \in \Omega^1(\mathbb{R}^n)$, In fact,

$$F^*(dh) = d(h \circ F) = dF^*h.$$

Proof

By Equation (12.3) with $f = h \circ F$, we get

$$d(h \circ F) = \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x^i}(h \circ F)\right) dx^i.$$

Using Equation (14.2) and the chain rule, we have

$$d(h \circ F) = \left(\frac{\partial h}{\partial y^j} \circ F\right) \frac{\partial F^j}{\partial x^i} dx^i = \left(\frac{\partial h}{\partial y^j} \circ F\right) F^* dy^j.$$

Also, we have $dh = \frac{\partial h}{\partial y^j} dy^j$. Then

$$F^*(dh) = F^*\left(\frac{\partial h}{\partial d^j} dy^j\right) = \left(\frac{\partial h}{\partial y^j} \circ F\right) F^* dy^j$$

by \land Proposition 37. It follows that $dF^*h = F^*dh$, as claimed. \Box

We will make explicit the operation *d* on *k*-forms for any *k* in Section 15.1. We will see that Corollary 38 works even in the general case (see **\leftrightarrow** Proposition 40).

66 Note 14.1.3 (More abuses of notation)

Let y = F(x). Let us employ the usual abuse of notation and identify a function with its output. In particular, since we write $y^{j} =$ $F^{j}(x^{1},...,x^{n})$, let us write $\frac{\partial y^{j}}{\partial x^{l}}$ for $\frac{\partial F^{j}}{\partial x^{l}}$. Then Equation (14.2) becomes

$$F^* dy^j = \frac{\partial y^j}{\partial x^l} dx^l. \tag{14.3}$$

Method to remember Equation (14.3) *The smooth map* $F: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$ allows us to think of the y^{j} 's as smooth functions of the x^{i} 's, and Equation (14.3) expresses the differential in the same sense as Equation (12.3) for the smooth functions $y^j = y^j(x^1, ..., x^n)$ in terms of the $dx^{i'}s$.

We will use this abuse of notation frequently in this course. For instance, it allows us to express the general formula for the pullback as follows: for

$$\eta = \frac{1}{k!} \eta_{j_1,\dots,j_k}(y) \, dy^{j_1} \wedge \dots \wedge dy^{j_k},$$

we have

$$F^*\eta = \frac{1}{k!} \eta_{j_1,\dots,j_k}(y(x)) \frac{\partial y^{j_1}}{\partial x^{l_1}} \dots \frac{\partial y^{j_k}}{\partial x^{l_k}} dx^{l_1} \wedge \dots \wedge dx^{l_k}.$$

Example 14.1.1

Consider the map $F: \mathbb{R}^3 \to \mathbb{R}^3$, given by $(\rho, \varphi, \theta) \mapsto (x, y, z)$, where

$$x = \rho \sin \varphi \cos \theta$$
, $y = \rho \sin \varphi \sin \theta$, and $z = \rho \cos \varphi$.

Then

$$F^*(dx) = d(F^*x) = \left(\frac{\partial x}{\partial \rho} d\rho + \frac{\partial x}{\partial \varphi} d\varphi + \frac{\partial x}{\partial \theta} d\theta\right)$$
$$= \sin \varphi \cos \theta d\rho + \rho \cos \varphi \cos \theta d\varphi - \rho \sin \varphi \sin \theta d\theta.$$

Similarly, we have

$$F^*(dy) = d(F^*y) = \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial \rho} d\rho + \frac{\partial y}{\partial \varphi} d\varphi + \frac{\partial y}{\partial \theta} d\theta\right)$$
$$= \sin \varphi \sin \theta d\rho + \rho \cos \varphi \sin \theta d\varphi + \rho \sin \varphi \sin \theta d\theta$$

and

$$F^*(dz) = d(F^*z) = \left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial \rho} d\rho + \frac{\partial z}{\partial \varphi} d\varphi + \frac{\partial z}{\partial \theta} d\theta\right)$$
$$= \cos \varphi d\rho - \rho \sin \varphi d\varphi.$$

It follows that

$$F^*(dx \wedge dy \wedge dz) = (F^* dx) \wedge (F * dy) \wedge (F^* dz)$$

$$= (\sin \varphi \cos \theta \, d\rho + \rho \cos \varphi \cos \theta \, d\varphi - \rho \sin \varphi \sin \theta \, d\theta) \wedge$$

$$(\sin \varphi \sin \theta \, d\rho + \rho \cos \varphi \sin \theta \, d\varphi + \rho \sin \varphi \cos \theta \, d\theta) \wedge$$

$$(\cos \varphi \, d\rho - \rho \sin \varphi \, d\varphi)$$

$$= (d\rho \wedge d\varphi \wedge d\theta) (\rho^2 \sin^3 \varphi \cos^2 \theta + \rho^2 \sin^3 \varphi \sin^2 \theta)$$

$$+ (d\rho \wedge d\varphi \wedge d\theta) (\rho^2 \sin \varphi \cos^2 \varphi \cos^2 \theta + \rho^2 \sin^2 \varphi \cos^2 \varphi \sin^2 \theta)$$

$$= (\rho^2 \sin \varphi) (d\rho \wedge d\varphi \wedge d\theta).$$

Recall that this formula relates the 'volume form' $dx \wedge dy \wedge dz$ of \mathbb{R}^3 in Cartesian coordinates to the 'volume form' $\rho^2 \sin \varphi \, d\rho \wedge d\varphi \wedge d\theta$ in spherical coordinates. We will see this again much later in the couse.

15 Lecture 15 Feb 11th

The Exterior Derivative

Recall Definition 43, where we defined a linear map from the space $\Omega^0(U) = C^{\infty}(U)$ to the space $\Omega^1(U)$, given by $f \to df$.

In this section, we shall

- generalize the above operation, giving ourselves a linear map $d: \Omega^k(U) \to \Omega^{k+1}(U)$ for all $k \ge 0$; and
- study the properties of this map.

■ Theorem 39 (Defining Properties of the Exterior Derivative)

Let $U\subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ be open. Then there exists a unique linear map $d:\Omega^k(U) o$ $\Omega^{k+1}(U)$ with the following three properties:

$$df = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^i} dx^i \qquad f \in \Omega^0(U) = C^{\infty}(U) \tag{15.1}$$

$$d(\alpha \wedge \beta) = (d\alpha) \wedge \beta + (-1)^{|\alpha||\beta|} \alpha \wedge (d\beta)$$
 (15.2)

$$d^2 = 0 (15.3)$$

Proof

Since dx^i is d of the smooth function x^i , Equation (15.3) states that $d(dx^i) = d^2(x^i) = 0$. It then follows from Equation (15.2) that we must therefore have

$$d(dx^{j_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge dx^{j_k}) = 0. \tag{15.4}$$

✓ Strategy

- 1. We will first derive a formula that this map d must satisfy if it exists.
- 2. By defining d by this formula, it must therefore have these properties that we have built upon.

Let $\eta \in \Omega^k(U)$. Then we can write

$$\eta = \frac{1}{k!} \eta_{j_1,\dots,j_k} dx^{j_1} \wedge \dots \wedge dx^{j_k}. \tag{15.5}$$

Recall that $f\alpha = f \wedge \alpha$ when $f \in \Omega^0(U)$. Applying d to both sides of Equation (15.5), and since $\eta_{j_1,\dots,j_k} \in \Omega^0(U) = C^\infty(U)$ and Equation (15.4), we have that

$$d\eta = d\left(\frac{1}{k!}\eta_{j_1,\dots,j_k} dx^{j_1} \wedge dx^{j_k}\right)$$

$$= \frac{1}{k!} d\eta_{j_1,\dots,j_k} \wedge dx^{j_1} \wedge \dots \wedge dx^{j_k}$$

$$+ \frac{1}{k!} \eta_{j_1,\dots,j_k} \wedge d(dx^{j_1} \wedge \dots \wedge dx^{j_k}) \quad \because \text{ Equation (15.2)}$$

$$= \frac{1}{k!} \frac{\partial \eta_{j_1,\dots,j_k}}{\partial x^p} dx^p \wedge dx^{j_1} \wedge \dots \wedge dx^{j_k}.$$

It follows that if such a map d exists, it must be given by the formula

$$d\eta = \frac{1}{k!} \frac{\partial \eta_{j_1,\dots,j_k}}{\partial x^p} dx^p \wedge dx^{j_1} \wedge \dots \wedge dx^{j_k}.$$
 (15.6)

So let us define d as in Equation (15.6). We shall now check that it satisfies the required properties.

Property by Equation (15.1) This is true by construction: for $f \in \Omega^0(U)$, we immediately have

$$df = \frac{1}{1!} \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} \, dy.$$

Property by Equation (15.2) Let

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{k!} \alpha_{i_1,\dots,i_k}$$
 and $\beta = \frac{1}{l!} \beta_{j_1,\dots,j_l} dx^{j_1} \wedge \dots \wedge dx^{j_l}$

be in $\Omega^k(U)$ and $\Omega^l(U)$, respectively. Then by construction of d, we

have

$$d(\alpha \wedge \beta) = d\left(\frac{1}{k!l!}\alpha_{i_{1},...,j_{k}}\beta_{j_{1},...,j_{l}} dx^{i_{1}} \wedge ... \wedge dx^{i_{k}} \wedge dx^{j_{1}} \wedge ... \wedge dx^{j_{l}}\right)$$

$$= \frac{1}{k!l!}\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{p}}(\alpha_{i_{1},...,i_{k}}\beta_{j_{1},...,j_{k}}) dx^{p} \wedge dx^{i_{1}} \wedge ... \wedge dx^{i_{k}} \wedge dx^{j_{1}} \wedge ... \wedge dx^{j_{l}}$$

$$= \frac{1}{k!l!}\left(\frac{\partial \alpha_{i_{1},...,i_{k}}}{\partial x^{p}}\beta_{j_{1},...,j_{l}} + \alpha_{i_{1},...,i_{k}}\frac{\partial \beta_{j_{1},...,j_{l}}}{\partial x^{p}}\right) dx^{p} \wedge dx^{i_{1}} \wedge ... \wedge dx^{j_{l}}$$

$$\wedge dx^{i_{k}} \wedge dx^{j_{1}} \wedge ... \wedge dx^{j_{l}}.$$

Simplifying this¹, we get

¹ This uses a similar technique as in one of the questions in A₁

$$d(\alpha \wedge \beta)$$

$$= \left(\frac{1}{k!} \frac{\partial \alpha_{i_1, \dots, i_k}}{\partial x^p} dx^p \wedge dx^{i_1} \wedge \dots \wedge dx^{i_k}\right) \wedge \left(\frac{1}{l!} \beta_{j_1, \dots, j_l} dx^{j_1} \wedge \dots \wedge dx^{j_l}\right)$$

$$+ (-1)^k \left(\frac{1}{k!} \alpha_{i-1, \dots, i_k} dx^{i_1} \wedge \dots \wedge dx^{i_k}\right)$$

$$\wedge \left(\frac{1}{l!} \frac{\partial \beta_{j_1, \dots, j_l}}{\partial x^p} dx^p \wedge dx^{j_1} \wedge \dots \wedge dx^{j_l}\right)$$

$$= d\alpha \wedge \beta(-1)^{|\alpha|} \wedge d\beta.$$

Property by Equation (15.3) Let $\alpha \in \Omega^k(U)$. We have

$$d\alpha = \frac{1}{k!} \frac{\partial \alpha_{i_1, \dots, i_k}}{\partial x^p} dx^p \wedge dx^{i_1} \wedge \dots \wedge dx^{i_k}.$$

Applying *d* once more, we have

$$d^2\alpha = \frac{1}{k!} \frac{\partial^2 \alpha_{i_1,\dots,i_k}}{\partial x^p \partial x^q} dx^q \wedge dx^p \wedge dx^{i_1} \wedge \dots \wedge dx^{i_k}.$$

Since α is smooth, the functions α_{i_1,\dots,i_k} are smooth. It follows by

Clairaut's that

$$\frac{\partial^2 \alpha_{i_1,\dots,i_k}}{\partial x^q \partial x^p} = \frac{\partial^2 \alpha_{i_1,\dots,i_k}}{\partial x^p \partial x^q}.$$

Note, however, that $dx^q \wedge dx^p = -dx^p \wedge dx^q$ is skew-symmetric. Therefore, as we sum over all p and q, the non-zero terms, where $p \neq q$ will cancel in pairs. Thus $d^2\alpha = 0$ for any $\alpha \in \Omega^k(U)$.

■ Definition 52 (Exterior Derivative)

The exterior derivative of a k-form $\eta \in \Omega^k(U)$, where $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ and

 $k \geq 0$, is a map $d: \Omega^k(U) \to \Omega^{k+1}(U)$ such that for $\eta \in \Omega^k(U)$ is given by $\eta = \frac{1}{k!} \eta_{j_1,\dots,j_k} dx^{j_1} \wedge \dots \wedge dx^{j_k}$, we have

$$d\eta = \frac{1}{k!} \frac{\partial \eta_{j_1,\ldots,j_k}}{\partial y} dy \wedge dx^{j_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge dx^{j_k},$$

as in Equation (15.6), satisfying Prheorem 39.

Example 15.1.1

Let $f \in \Omega^0(U)$ where $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^3$. Then

$$df = f_x dx + f_y dy + f_z dz,$$

and

$$d^{2}f = df_{x} \wedge dx + df_{y} \wedge dy + df_{z} \wedge dz$$

$$= (f_{xx} dx + f_{xy} dy + f_{xz} dz) \wedge dx$$

$$+ (f_{yx} dx + f_{yy} dy + f_{yz} dz) \wedge dy$$

$$+ (f_{zx} dx + f_{zy} dy + f_{zz} dz) \wedge dz$$

$$= f_{xy} dy \wedge dx + dxz dz \wedge dx + f_{yx} dx \wedge dy$$

$$+ f_{yz} dz \wedge dy + f_{zx} dx \wedge dz + f_{zy} dy \wedge dz$$

$$= 0$$

Example 15.1.2

Let $\alpha = ^2 y \, dy - \sin(y) \, dx \in \Omega^1(\mathbb{R}^2)$. Then

$$d\alpha = (d(x^2y)) \wedge dy - (d(\sin y)) \wedge dx$$

$$= (2xy dx + x^2 dy) \wedge dy - (\cos y dy) \wedge dx$$

$$= 2xy dx \wedge dy + 0 + \cos y dx \wedge dy$$

$$= (2xy + \cos y) dx \wedge dy \in \Omega^2(\mathbb{R}^2).$$

The property d^2 motivates the following definitions.

An element $\alpha \in \Omega^k(U)$ on U is called closed if $d\alpha = 0$. It is called exact if $\exists \gamma \in \Omega^{k-1}(U)$ such that $\alpha = d\gamma$.

66 Note 15.1.1

By Equation (15.3), all exact forms are closed.

This is not true in general: a closed form need not be exact. It is, however, true if the topology of the open set U consists of certain properties.

Relationship between the Exterior Derivative and the Pullback

♦ Proposition 40 (Commutativity of the Pullback and the Exterior Derivative)

Let $F: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$ be smooth. Let $\eta \in \Omega^k(\mathbb{R}^m)$. Then $d\eta \in \Omega^{k+1}(\mathbb{R}^m)$ and $F^*(d\eta) \in \Omega^{k+1}(\mathbb{R}^n)$. We also have $F^*\eta \in \Omega^k(\mathbb{R}^n)$ and $d(F^*\eta) \in$ $\Omega^{k+1}(\mathbb{R}^n)$. In particular, we have

$$F^*(d\eta) == d(F^*\eta),$$

i.e. the pullback and the exterior derivative commute.

Proof

We proved this for the k = 0 case in \bigcirc Corollary 38. WMA $k \geq 1$. Since both d and F^* are linear, it is enough to show that they commute on decomposable forms². Suppose $\alpha = h dy^{i_1} \wedge i_2$ $\ldots \wedge dy^{i_k} \in \Omega^k(\mathbb{R}^m)$ with $h \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^m)$. By \(\bigstyle=\text{Corollary 36}\) and Corollary 38, we have

$$F^*\alpha = (F^*h)F^*dy^{i_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge F^*dy^{i_k}$$
$$= (F^*h)(dF^*y^{i_1}) \wedge \ldots \wedge (dF^*y^{i_k}).$$

Taking the exterior derivative of the above expression, which is a

² Remember that these are like the base forms for *k*-forms.

form on \mathbb{R}^n , and using \blacksquare Theorem 39, we get

$$d(F^*\alpha) = (dF^*h) \wedge (dF^*y^{i_1}) \wedge \ldots \wedge (dF^*y^{i_k}).$$

On the other hand, we have

$$d\alpha = (dh) \wedge dy^{i_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge dy^{i_k},$$

and therefore

$$F^*(d\alpha) = (F^* dh) \wedge (F^* dy^{i_1}) \wedge \ldots \wedge (F^* dy^{i_k})$$
$$= (dF^*h) \wedge (dF^*y^{i_1}) \wedge \ldots \wedge (dF^*y^{i_k}).$$

We have that the expressions agree, and so $dF^* = F^* d$ as claimed. \Box

Part III Submanifolds of \mathbb{R}^n

16 Lecture 16 Feb 13th

We shall now¹ look into objects of which integration of differential forms make sense.

1 finally!

Submanifolds in Terms of Local Parameterizations

E Definition 54 (Immersion)

Let $k \leq n$. Let $U \subset \mathbb{R}^k$ be open. A smooth map $\varphi : U \to \mathbb{R}^n$ is called an immersion if, for each $u \in V$, the Jacobian $(D \varphi)_u : \mathbb{R}^k \to \mathbb{R}^n$ is an injective linear map.

66 Note 16.1.1

This means that $(D \varphi)_u$ has maximal rank k. Equivalently, that k columns of $(D \varphi)_u$ are linearly independent vectors in \mathbb{R}^n .

We may also express the condition to be an immersion in a more invariant mannerm in particular, using the pushforward ² map $(d\varphi)_u$: $T_u\mathbb{R}^k \to T_{\varphi(u)}\mathbb{R}^n$. The linear maps $(d\varphi)_u$ and $(D\varphi)_u$ differs only by pre- and post-compositions with linear isomorphisms. It follows that they have the same rank, and so we may also define an immersion as

an immersion is a smooth map whose pushforward $(d\varphi)_u$ is injective for all $u \in U$.

² See also A₂, and Section 13.2.

■ Definition 55 (parameterizations and parameterized Submanifolds)

An immersion $\varphi: U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k \to \mathbb{R}^n$ that is also a homeomorphism onto its image is called a parameterization. The image $\varphi(U) \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ of a parameterization $\varphi: U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k \to \mathbb{R}^n$ is called a k-dimensional parameterized submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n .

66 Note 16.1.2

We see that a parameterization is an immersion which is also a continuous bijection of U onto $\varphi(U)$, with a continuous inverse.

Let's consider some examples.

Example 16.1.1

Suppose k = 1, and $F : U \subseteq \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}^n$ an immersion.

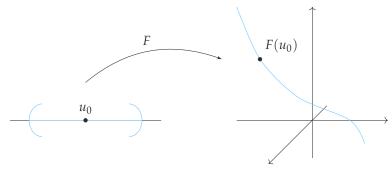


Figure 16.1: Immersion from \mathbb{R} to \mathbb{R}^n

Since *F* is an immersion, it follows that

$$(DF)_{u_0} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial F^1}{\partial t}(u_0) \\ \vdots \\ \frac{\partial F^n}{\partial t}(u_0) \end{pmatrix}$$

has rank 1. Thus $(DF)_{u_0}$ is non-zero, implying that when k=1, an immersion is just a smooth curve with a non-zero velocity in the domain.³

Example 16.1.2

³ I'm not entirely sure if I follow. How did an immersion go from having an injective linear map to making sure that no points can the differential be 0?

Suppose k = 1 and n = 2, and $F(t) = (t^2, t^3)$ over $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}$. Then

$$(DF)_0 = \begin{pmatrix} 2t \Big|_0 \\ 3t^2 \Big|_0 \end{pmatrix} = 0.$$

Thus *F* is not an immersion.



Let $\varphi: U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k \to \mathbb{R}^n$ be a parameterization. Let $h: \tilde{U} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k \to \mathbb{R}^k$ be a diffeomorphism of \tilde{U} onto $U = h(\tilde{U})$. Then the composition

$$\tilde{\varphi} = \varphi \circ h : \tilde{U} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k \to \mathbb{R}^n$$

is also an immersion.

Proof

First, note that φ and h are both smooth⁴. So $\varphi \circ h$ is smooth. Also, $\varphi \circ h$ is a homeomorphism of \tilde{U} onto $\varphi(h(\tilde{U})) = \varphi(U)$, since it is a composition of homeomorphism maps.

Now by the Chain Rule, we have

$$(D(\varphi \circ h))_u = (D \varphi)_{h(u)} \circ (D h)_u.$$

The smoothness of φ and h guarantees that D φ and D h are smooth, respectively. Thus $D(\varphi \circ h)$ is smooth. Further, since h is a diffeomorphism, Dh is an invertible linear map. Thus the composition $(D \varphi)_{h(u)} \circ (D h)_u$ is injective.

Therefore $\varphi \circ h$ is an immersion.

66 Note 16.1.3

Lemma 41 tells us that there are more ways than one to parameterization a submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n .

 $^{\scriptscriptstyle 4}\,\varphi$ is an immersion, which is defined to be smooth, and h is a diffeomorphism.

66 Note 16.1.4

When k = 1, an immersion is just a smooth curve $\gamma : U \subseteq \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}^n$, where its velocity is $\gamma'(t_0) = (d\gamma)_{t_0}$ non-zero for all $t_0 \in U$.

■ Definition 56 (*j*th Coordinate Curve)

Let $\varphi: U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k \to \mathbb{R}^n$ be an immersion. if we fix all the coordinates (u^1, \ldots, u^k) except for the j^{th} coordinate u^j , and think of φ as a function of only u^j , then φ is a smooth curve on \mathbb{R}^n , called the j^{th} coordinate curve of the parameterization φ . This is a smooth curve on \mathbb{R}^n with velocity vector at $u \in U$ given by

$$\frac{\partial \varphi}{\partial u^j}(u) = \left(\frac{\partial \varphi^1}{\partial u^j}(u), \dots, \frac{\partial \varphi^n}{\partial u^j}(u)\right).$$

66 Note 16.1.5

The velocity vector $\frac{\partial \varphi}{\partial u^l}(u)$ is the j^{th} column of $(D \varphi)_u$. This means that the condition of being an immersion is equivalent to saying that for all $u \in U$, the k velocity vectors $\frac{\partial \varphi}{\partial u^l}(u), \ldots, \frac{\partial \varphi}{\partial u^k}(u)$ are linearly independent, spanning the k-dimensional subspace of $T_{\varphi(u)}\mathbb{R}^n$.

■ Definition 57 (Tangent Space on a Submanifold)

Let $\varphi: U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k \to \mathbb{R}^n$ be a parameterization, so that $\varphi(U)$ is a k-dimensional parameterized submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n . Then the **tangent** space to $\varphi(U)$ at $\varphi(u)$, denoted as $T_{\varphi(u)}\varphi(U)$, is defined to be the k-dimensional subspace of $T_{\varphi(u)}\mathbb{R}^n$ spanned by the k vectors

$$\frac{\partial \varphi}{\partial u^1}(u), \ldots, \frac{\partial \varphi}{\partial u^k}(u).$$

With these, we can now define a submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n in a more general way.

E Definition 58 (Submanifolds)

Let $1 \le k \le n$, and $M \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$. We say that M is a k-dimensional **submanifold** of \mathbb{R}^n if there exists a covering of M by open subsets $\{V_{\alpha}\subseteq\mathbb{R}^n\mid \alpha\in A\}$, for some index set A, a collection of open subsets U_{α} of \mathbb{R}^k , and a collection of mappings $\varphi_\alpha:U_\alpha\to M\subseteq\mathbb{R}^n$ such that the following conditions hold:

- 1. Each φ_{α} is a homeomorphism of U_{α} onto $V_{\alpha} \cap M^5$.
- 2. Each ϕ_{α} is a smooth immersion.

 5 Note that this means U_{α} and V_{α} have the same topological structure.

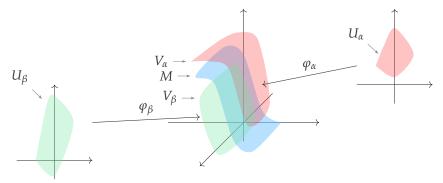


Figure 16.2: Definition 58 in action

66 Note 16.1.6

We see that a k-dimensional submanifold M of \mathbb{R}^n is a subset of a notnecessarily-disjoint union pieces of open sets, each of which is a kdimensional parameterized submanifold of \mathbb{R}^{n-6} .

⁶ Some authors call a *k*-dimensional submanifold a regular submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n , and use the term regular map for a parameterization.

17.1 Submanifolds in Terms of Local parameterizations (Continued)

Given that the maps φ_{α} , φ_{β} are homeomorphisms, we can consider the map that goes from one parameterization to another.

■ Definition 59 (Transition Map)

Let M be a k-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n . If $V_{\alpha} \cap V_{\beta} \cap M \neq \emptyset$, the transition map

$$\varphi_{\beta\alpha}: \varphi_{\alpha}^{-1}(V_{\alpha} \cap V_{\beta} \cap M) \to \varphi_{\beta}^{-1}(V_{\alpha} \cap V_{\beta} \cap M)$$

is defined by

$$\varphi_{\beta\alpha} = \varphi_{\beta}^{-1} \circ \varphi_{\alpha}.$$

66 Note 17.1.1

Referring to Figure 16.2, we see that this is a map that goes from a subset of U_{α} to a subset of U_{β} .

Also, notice that $\varphi_{\beta\alpha}^{-1} = \varphi_{\alpha\beta}$, and $\varphi_{\alpha\alpha}$ is the identity mapping.

The following is a useful realization.

♦ Proposition 42 (Transition Maps are Diffeomorphisms)

Each transition map $\varphi_{\beta\alpha}$ is a diffeomorphism.

The proof for Proposition 42 is not required for the course, but still useful to know.

Proof

Suppose $V_{\alpha} \cap V_{\beta} \cap M \neq \emptyset$ and consider the transition map $\varphi_{\beta\alpha} = \varphi_{\beta}^{-1} \circ \varphi_{\alpha}$, which

$$\varphi_{\beta\alpha}: \varphi_{\alpha}^{-1}(V_{\alpha} \cap V_{\beta} \cap M) \to \varphi_{\beta}^{-1}(V_{\alpha} \cap V_{\beta} \cap M).$$

We know that $\varphi_{\beta\alpha}$ is a homeomorphism since it is a composition of two such maps. Therefore, it suffices for us to show that $\varphi_{\beta\alpha}$ is smooth, which would analogously show that $\varphi_{\beta\alpha}^{-1}$ is smooth. Let $x = \varphi_{\alpha}(u_{\alpha}) = \varphi_{\beta}(u_{\beta}) \in V_{\alpha} \cap V_{\beta} \cap M$, where

$$\varphi_{\alpha}(u) = (\varphi_{\alpha}^{1}(u), \dots, \varphi_{\alpha}^{n}(u)),$$

$$\varphi_{\beta}(u) = (\varphi_{\beta}^{1}(u), \dots, \varphi_{\beta}^{n}(u)).$$

Since φ_{β} is an immersion, the Jacobian $(D \varphi_{\beta})_{u_{\beta}}$ is an injective linear map with rank k. By Corollary 15, $\exists \{l_1, \ldots, l_k\} \subseteq \{1, \ldots, n\}$ such that the $k \times k$ minor of $(D \varphi_{\beta})_{u_{\beta}}$, as described in Proposition 14, is invertible at u_{β} .

Now define $\tilde{\varphi}_{\beta}: U_{\beta} \to \mathbb{R}^k$ by

$$\tilde{\varphi}_{\beta}(u_{\beta}) = \left(\varphi_{\beta}^{l_1}(u_{\beta}), \ldots, \varphi_{\beta}^{l_k}(u_{\beta})\right),$$

which is smooth since each of the $\varphi_{\beta}^{l_i}$'s are smooth. By construction, and by our argument in the last paragraph, $\tilde{\varphi}_{\beta}$ has an invertible Jacobian at u_{β} . Applying \square Theorem A.4, we know that $\exists U_{\beta}' \subseteq U_{\beta}$ containing u_{β} and an open subset $W_{\beta} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k$ containing $\tilde{\varphi}_{\beta}(u_{\beta})$, such that $\tilde{\varphi}_{\beta}: U_{\beta}' \to W_{\beta}$ is a diffeomorphism. In particular, we have that $\tilde{\varphi}_{\beta}^{-1}: W_{\beta} \to U_{\beta}'$ is smooth.

Using a similar argument for φ_{β} , we can define $\tilde{\varphi}_{\alpha}: U_{\alpha} \to \mathbb{R}^k$ by

$$\tilde{\varphi}_{\alpha}(u_{\alpha}) = (\varphi_{\alpha}^{l_1}(u_{\alpha}), \ldots, \varphi_{\alpha}^{l_k}(u_{\alpha})),$$

using the same subset $\{l_1,\ldots,l_k\}\subseteq\{1,\ldots,n\}$, and $\tilde{\varphi}_{\alpha}$ is smooth. Let $U'_{\alpha}=(\varphi_{\alpha}^{-1}\circ\varphi_{\beta})(U'_{\beta})$, which is an open subset of U_{α} . It follows

by construction that on U'_{α} , we have

$$arphi_{etalpha}=arphi_{eta}^{-1}\circarphi_{lpha}= ilde{arphi}_{eta}^{-1}\circ ilde{arphi}_{lpha}:U_{lpha}' o U_{eta}'.$$

Thus $\varphi_{\beta\alpha}$ is a composition of two smooth functions on the neighbourhood of u_{α} , so $\varphi_{\beta\alpha}$ is smooth at u_{α} .

An informal discussion on why M is k-dimensional in a n-dimensional space Informally, a subset M is a k-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n if it is locally homeomorphic to an open subset of \mathbb{R}^k , via the identification of $V_{\alpha} \cap M$ with $U_{\alpha} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k$ through φ_{α} . From \Diamond Proposition 42, any two identifications of the same region of M with open subsets of \mathbb{R}^k are diffeomorphic, i.e. homeomorphic and preserves smoothness. This realization of M being identifiable with such k-dimensional subsets is why we say that *M* is *k*-dimensional.

■ Definition 60 (Local parameterizations)

Under \blacksquare *Definition* 55, each $\varphi_{\alpha}:U_{\alpha}\to M\subseteq\mathbb{R}^n$ is called a *local* parameterization of M, and the collection

$$\{\varphi_{\alpha}: U_{\alpha} \to V_{\alpha} \cap M : \alpha \in A\}$$

of local parameterizations is called a cover of M. Given any such cover, any other mapping $\psi: U \to V \cap M$ that satisfies \blacksquare Definition 55 is called an allowable local parameterization. The set of all possible allowable local parameterizations under a given cover is called the maximal cover of the cover.

66 Note 17.1.2

Allowable local parameterizations can be added to a cover and the cover will still cover M, hence its name.

Example 17.1.1

Consider the unit sphere $S^{n-1} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$, which is

$$S^{n-1} = \{ x \in \mathbb{R}^n : ||x||^2 = 1 \},$$

where

$$||x||^2 = (x^1)^2 + \dots + (x^n)^2$$

is the usual Euclidean norm 1.

¹ See PMATH 351

Claim S^{n-1} is an (n-1)-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n .

Let $p \in S^{n-1}$. By the construct of S^{n-1} , we know that $\exists j \in \{1,\ldots,n\}$ such that $p^j \neq 0$. Then suppose $p^j > 0$, and consider the set

$$V_i^+ := \{ x \in \mathbb{R}^n : x^k > 0 \},$$

which is open in \mathbb{R}^n . Then $p \in V_i^+ \cap S^{n-1}$. Now let

$$U = \{ u \in \mathbb{R}^{n-1} \mid ||u||^2 < 1 \},$$

which is an open subset of \mathbb{R}^{n-1} . Define a map $\varphi_i^+:U\to V_i^+$ by

$$\varphi_j^+(u) = \left(u^1, \dots, u^{j-1}, +\sqrt{1-\|u\|^2}, u^j, \dots, u^{n-1}\right).$$

Figure 17.1: φ_3^+ in \mathbb{R}^3

Notice that φ_j^+ is a bijection between U and $V_j^+ \cap S^{n-1}$. Also, φ_j^+ is smooth, since each of its terms are smooth. Its inverse $(\varphi_j^+)^{-1}:V_j^+ \cap S^{n-1} \to U$ is given by

$$(\varphi_i^+)^{-1}(x) = (x^1, \dots, x^{j-1}, x^{j+1}, \dots, x^n) \in \mathbb{R}^{n-1},$$

which is known at the stereographic projection from \mathbb{R}^n to \mathbb{R}^{n-1} . The inverse is continuous because it is the restriction to $V_j^+ \cap S^{n-1}$ of a continuous map on V_j^+ .

It remains to show that $\varphi_j^+:U\to V_j^+\cap S^{n-1}$ is an immersion. Notice that its Jacobian is the $(n\times (n-1))$ -matrix

$$(\mathsf{D}\,\varphi_j^+) = \begin{pmatrix} I_{(j-1)\times(j-1)} & 0_{(j-1)\times(n-j)} \\ *_{1\times(j-1)} & *_{1\times(n-j)} \\ 0_{(n-j)\times(j-1)} & I_{(n-j)\times(n-j)} \end{pmatrix},$$

expressed in block form, where $0_{m \times l}$ denotes the $m \times l$ zero matrix,

 $I_{m \times m}$ denotes the $m \times m$ identity matrix, and $*_{m \times l}$ is some $m \times l$ matrix whose entries are irrelevant to us. Notice that if we move the j^{th} row to the bottom, we obtain an $(n-1) \times (n-1)$ matrix in the first n-1 rows. Thus the matrix $(D \varphi_i^+)$ is injective since it has rank n-1 (which is maximal).

It follows that $\varphi_j^+:U\to V_j^+$ is a local paramterization for S^{n-1} whose image contains p. Had we started, instead, with $p^{j} < 0$, then we can define $\varphi_i^-:U o V_i^-$ analogously, taking the negative square root.

In conclusion, we covered S^{n-1} by 2n local parameterizations, and thus proving that S^{n-1} is an (n-1)-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n .

Example 17.1.2

Let a < b and let $h : (a,b) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a smooth function such that h(t) > 0 for all $t \in (a, b)$. Consider the subset M of \mathbb{R}^3 given by

$$M = \{(x, y, z) \in \mathbb{R}^3 : a < z < b, x^2 + y^2 = (h(z))^2\}.$$

Then M comprises all points in \mathbb{R}^3 whose z coordinates lies strictly between a and b, whose distance $\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ from the z-axis is determined by h(z) > 0.

In other words, the set *M* is obtained by taking the graph of the curve r = h(z) on the r - z plane and resolving it around the z-axis. We call such an *M* a surface of revolution.

Claim M is a 2-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^3 .

To show this, we can show that every point in *M* lies in the image of some local parameterization. Using cylindrical coordinates on \mathbb{R}^3 , the points on *M* are

$$x = h(z) \cos \theta$$
, $y = h(z) \sin \theta$, and $z = z$, for $a < z < b$.

Consider the following two maps:

$$\varphi: (a,b) \times (0,2\pi) \to \mathbb{R}^3$$
$$\varphi(t,\theta) = (h(t)\cos\theta, h(t)\sin\theta, t)$$

and

$$\tilde{\varphi}: (a,b) \times (-\pi,\pi) \to \mathbb{R}^3$$

$$\tilde{\varphi}(\tilde{t},\tilde{\theta}) = (h(\tilde{t})\cos\tilde{\theta}, h(\tilde{t})\sin\tilde{\theta}, \tilde{t}).$$

It is clear that these two maps are smooth maps from open subsets of \mathbb{R}^2 whose images are contained in M. It is also relatively easy to see that both φ and $\tilde{\varphi}$ are homeomorphisms:

- all the terms are continuous;
- the different θ 's (and similarly for $\tilde{\theta}$) give us unique points for every t (respectively, \tilde{t}).

For instance, the inverse of φ is $\varphi^{-1}(x,y,z)=\left(z,\arctan\frac{y}{x}\right)$ at points where $x\neq 0$, and by $\varphi^{-1}(x,y,z)=\left(z,\cot^{-1}\frac{x}{y}\right)$ at $y\neq 0$, and in both cases the inverse trigonometric functions are defined to take values in $(0,2\pi)$ (which we may translate around as we please). Note that when both $x\neq 0$ and $y\neq 0$, the two expressions of φ^{-1} agree with one another since $\cot\theta=\frac{1}{\tan\theta}$.

It remains to show that these maps are immersions. We have

$$(\mathrm{D}\,\varphi) = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial \varphi^1}{\partial t} & \frac{\partial \varphi^1}{\partial \theta} \\ \frac{\partial \varphi^2}{\partial t} & \frac{\partial \varphi^2}{\partial \theta} \\ \frac{\partial \varphi^3}{\partial t} & \frac{\partial \varphi^3}{\partial \theta} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} h'(t)\cos\theta & -h(t)\sin\theta \\ h'(t)\sin\theta & h(t)\cos\theta \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Notice that the columns are not scalar multiples of each other, and so $(D\varphi)$ has rank 2, which, in this context, is maximal. It follows that $(D\varphi)$ is injective at all points in its domain. Thus φ is an immersion. Therefore, M is indeed a 2-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^3 , and we have successfully covered M with two local parameterizations.

18.1 Submanifolds as Level Sets

Quite often, submanifolds of \mathbb{R}^n appear in an implicitly, i.e. as a set of points in \mathbb{R}^n which satisfy some equation. In this section, we shall see that locally so, all submanifolds show up in this manner.

E Definition 61 (Maximal Rank)

Let $1 \le k \le n-1$, and let $F: U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^{n-k}$ be a smooth map, where U is open in \mathbb{R}^n . We say that F has maximal rank on W if the Jacobian $(DF)_x$ has maximal rank n-k at each point $x \in W$.

We saw the terminology maximal rank arise in Definition 54, but in either case, in terms of how the word maximal is used, we know what it means.

66 Note 18.1.1

The above definition is equivalent to $(D F^j)_x$ being linearly independent for all $x \in W$ for j = 1, ..., n - k, where $(D F^j)_x$ is the Jacobian of the component function $F^j : W \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ at $x \in W$.

Definition 62 (Level Set)

The *level set* of a smooth function $F:U\subseteq \mathbb{R}^n\to \mathbb{R}$ ¹ corresponding to a value $c\in \mathbb{R}$ is the set of points ²

$$\{(x_1,\ldots,x_n)\in\mathbb{R}^n\mid F(x_1,\ldots,x_n)=c\}.$$

 $^{\text{I}}$ Note that the definition of a level set is only for smooth functions with $\mathbb R$ as its codomain.

² Weisstein, E. W. (n.d.). Level set. MathWorld – A Wolfram Math Resource. http://mathworld.wolfram.com/LevelSet.html

Theorem 43 (Implicit Submanifold Theorem)

Let $1 \le k \le n-1$, and let $F: W \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^{n-k}$ be a smooth map, where W is open in \mathbb{R}^n . Suppose that the subset $M = F^{-1}(0) \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ is nonempty. If F has maximal rank on $W \cap M$, then M is a k-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n .

Proof

Let $x_0 \in M = F^{-1}(0)$. Then $F(x_0) = 0$. Since $(DF)_{x_0}$ has maximal rank n - k on $W \cap M$, by the non-vanishing minor corollary, there exists a subset $\{l_1, \ldots, l_{n-k}\} \subseteq \{1, \ldots, n\}$ such that the matrix $\frac{\partial F^i}{\partial x^{l_j}}$ is invertible at x_0 . Let $\{m_1, \ldots, m_k\} = \{l_1, \ldots, l_{n-k}\}^C \subseteq \{1, \ldots, n\}$.

Now let $y^j = x^{l_j}$, so that

$$y=(y^1,\ldots,y^{n-k})\in\mathbb{R}^{n-k},$$

and let $w^j = x^{m_j}$, so that

$$w=(w^1,\ldots,w^k)\in\mathbb{R}^k.$$

Let $\tilde{F}: \mathbb{R}^{(n-k)+k} \to \mathbb{R}^{n-k}$ by $\tilde{F}(y,w) = F(x)$. Then by our hypothesis, the matrix $\frac{\partial \tilde{F}^i}{\partial y^j}$ is invertible at (y_0,w_0) . Applying the implicit function theorem, there exists

- an open neighbourhood $U' \subseteq U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ of (y_0, w_0) ,
- an open neighbourhood $V \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k$ of w_0 , and
- a smooth map $\tilde{\varphi}: V \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k \to \mathbb{R}^{n-k}$,

such that

$$\{(y, w) \in U' : \tilde{F}(y, w) = 0\} = \{(\tilde{\varphi}(w), w) : w \in V\}.$$

Translating back to the original notation, we can define the map

$$\varphi: V \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k \to \mathbb{R}^n$$
 by

$$\varphi^{m_j} = w^j = x^{m_j}$$
, and $\varphi^{l_j}(w) = \tilde{\varphi}^j(w)$.

By the construction above, we know that φ is smooth. Now notice that $\varphi^{-1}: \varphi(V) \to V$ is given by $\varphi^{-1}(x) = w$, where $w^j =$ x^{m-j} , and thus φ^{-1} is continuous on $\varphi(V)$. Also, it is clear that φ is continuous. So we do have that φ is a homeomorphism.

Finally to show that φ is an immersion, notice that for j =1,..., k, the m_i^{th} row of $(D\varphi)_w$ has a 1 in the j^{th} column and zeroes everywhere else. Thus the columns of $(D \varphi)_w$ is linearly independent.

Thus we have that $U' \cap F^{-1}(0) = U' \cap M = \varphi(V)$, with φ : $V \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k \to \varphi(V) \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ satisfying \blacksquare Definition 55. Since $x_0 \in M$ was arbitrarily chosen, it follows that M is indeed a k-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n .

Example 18.1.1

If n - k = 1, then $F : U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ has a maximal rank on U if the 1-form dF is never zero on U. Following the above, $M = F^{-1}(0)$ is an (n-1)-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n , and is also called a hypersurface of \mathbb{R}^n , or a codimension one submanifold.

Note that when n = 3, this is a surface M in \mathbb{R}^3 in the sense that we can perceive.

Example 18.1.2

If n - k = n - 1, then $F : U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^{n-1}$ has maximal rank on *U* if the 1-forms dF^i of the n-1 functions F^1, \ldots, F^{n-1} are all linearly independent from one another at each point in U. Then by Theorem 43, $M = F^{-1}(0)$ is a 1-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n , called a **curve** in \mathbb{R}^n , which is the usual curve that we know.

Putting this together with the last example, we deduce that a curve in \mathbb{R}^n is obtainable as the intersection of n-1 hypersurfaces $(F^i)^{-1}(0)$ in \mathbb{R}^n , where the 1-forms dF^1, \ldots, dF^{n-1} are linearly independent at all points on the intersection.

Example 18.1.3

Consider the sphere $S^{n-1} \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ from Example 17.1.1. Note that we may now write this as $S^{n-1} = F^{-1}(0)$ where $F : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ is the smooth function

$$F(x) = ||x||^2 - 1 = (x^1)^2 + ... + (x^n)^2 - 1.$$

We notice that $(DF)_x = (2x^1 \dots 2x^n)$, which is never 0 on $F^{-1}(0)$. Thus from rank-nullity, $(DF)_x$ has maximal rank 1 on $F^{-1}(0)$. By \blacksquare Theorem 43, once again, we have that $S^{n-1} = F^{-1}(0)$ is an (n-1)-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n .

Example 18.1.4

Consider the surface of revolution $M \subset \mathbb{R}^3$ from Example 17.1.2. We can write this set as $M = F^{-1}(0)$, where $F : \mathbb{R}^3 \to \mathbb{R}$ is the smooth function

$$F(x,y,z) = x^2 + y^2 - (h(z))^2$$
.

Notice that $(DF)_{(x,y,z)} = (2x \quad 2y \quad -2h(z)h'(z))$. For $(DF)_{(x,y,z)}$ to have 0 at (x,y,z), we must have x=y=h'(z)=0, since h(z)>0. In particular, for $(DF)_{(0,0,z)}$ to have rank 0, we must have h(z)=az for some scalar $a\in\mathbb{R}$. However, note that $F(0,0,z)=-(h(z))^2<0$. Therefore, the points $(x,y,z)\in\mathbb{R}^3$ where $(DF)_{(x,y,z)}$ does not have maximal rank are not on the level set $M=F^{-1}(0)$. It follows again from \blacksquare Theorem 43 that $M=F^{-1}(0)$ is a 2-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^3 .

Let us look at an example with higher **codimension**, i.e. an example of an explicitly defined k-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n with n-k>1.

Example 18.1.5

Let $(x, y, z, w) \in \mathbb{R}^4$ and consider the set

$$M = \{(x, y, z, w) \in \mathbb{R}^4 : x^2 + y^2 = 1, z^2 + w^2 = 1\}.$$

Remark 18.1.1

Notice that Example 18.1.3 is a much faster way than Example 17.1.1 to finding a cover!

We can write this set as $M = F^{-1}(0)$ where $F : \mathbb{R}^4 \to \mathbb{R}^2$ is the smooth function

$$F(x,y,z,w) = (x^2 + y^2 - 1, z^2 + w^2 - 1).$$

We have that

$$(DF)_{(x,y,z,w)} = \begin{pmatrix} 2x & 2y & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2z & 2w \end{pmatrix},$$

which clearly has rank 2 at all points on M. It follows from Theorem 43 that $M = F^{-1}(0)$ is a 2-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^4 .

Note that *M* can be thought of as the Cartesian product of two copies of $S^2 \subset \mathbb{R}^2$. Consequently, we write $M = S^1 \times S^1$, and call Mthe standard 2-torus in \mathbb{R}^4 .

18.2 Local Description of Submanifolds of \mathbb{R}^n

In this section we shall look into more results about the local structure of submanifolds.

Theorem 44 (Points on the parameterization)

Let M be a k-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n , and let $x \in M$. Then there exists a local parameterization $\psi: W \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k \to \mathbb{R}^n$ for M with $x \in \psi(W)$ such that $\exists \{l_1, \ldots, l_k\} \subseteq \{1, \ldots, n\}$ with complement $\{m_1, \ldots, m_{n-k}\}$ such that $x = \psi(w)$ satisfies

$$x^{l_j} = \psi^{l_j}(w) = w^j, \ j = 1, \dots, k,$$
$$x^{m_j} = \psi^{m_j}(w) = \psi^{m_j}(w^1, \dots, w^k), \ j = 1, \dots, n - k.$$

Proof

Since M is a submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n , $\exists \varphi : U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k \to \mathbb{R}^n$, a local parameterization, with $x \in \varphi(U)$. Since φ is an immersion, the Jacobian $(D \varphi)_u$ has rank k, and so \bigcirc Corollary 15 gives us $\{l_1,\ldots,l_k\}\subseteq\{1,\ldots,n\}$ with complement $\{m_1,\ldots,m_{n-k}\}$ such that the matrix $\frac{\partial \varphi^{l_i}}{\partial u^j}$ is invertible at u. Let $\tilde{\varphi}:U\to\mathbb{R}^k$ by

$$\tilde{\varphi}(u) = (\varphi^{l_1}(u), \dots, \varphi^{l_k}(u)).$$

It is clear that $\tilde{\varphi}$ is smooth on U, since its components are subsets of the component functions of the smooth map φ on U. By construction of $\tilde{\varphi}$, the Jacobian $\frac{\partial \varphi^{l_i}}{\partial u^l}$ is invertible at u. Thus by applying the inverse function theorem, there exists

- an open subset $U' \subseteq U$ containing u,
- an open subset $W \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k$ containing $w = \tilde{\varphi}(u)$ such that $\tilde{\varphi}: U' \to W$ is a diffeomorphism.

In particular, $\varphi^{-1}: W \to U'$ is smooth.

Note that $w^j = \tilde{\varphi}^j(u) = \varphi^{l_j}(u) = x^{l_j}$. Thus we can define $\psi : W \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k \to \mathbb{R}^n$ by $\psi : \varphi \circ \tilde{\varphi}^{-1}$. It follows from Lemma 41 that ψ is a local parameterization of M. Therefore, we have

$$\psi^{l_j}(w) = \varphi^{l_j}(\tilde{\varphi}^{-1}(w)) = \varphi^{l_j}(u) = x^{l_j} = w^j$$
 and $\psi^{m_j}(w) = \psi^{m_j}(w^1, \dots, w^k),$

as we wanted.

66 Note 18.2.1

Theorem 44 shows that locally (on $\psi(W)$) the submanifold is given as the graph of a function of k variables. We can explicitly write n - k of the coordinates x^j as smooth functions of the other k variables.

Example 19 Mar 01st

19.1 Local Description of Submanifolds of \mathbb{R}^n (Continued)

♦ Proposition 45 (Local Version of the Implicit Submanifold Theorem)

Let M be a subset of \mathbb{R}^n with the following property. For each $x \in M$, $\exists W$ an open neighbourhood of $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ such that $W \cap M = F^{-1}(0)$ for some smooth mapping $F: W \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^{n-k}$ which has maximal rank on W. Then M is a k-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n .

Proof

Let $x \in M$, $F: W \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^{n-k}$ which has maximal rank on W, and $x \in W$. It follows that if we let $M = W \cap M$ in the Implicit Submanifold Theorem, then there exists a local parameterization $f: U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k \to F(U)$ for some open neighbourhood f(U) of x. Since x is arbitrary, it follows that M is indeed a k-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n .

Interestingly, and fortunate to some extent, the converse of

• Proposition 45 is true.

♦ Proposition 46 (Converse of the Local Version of the Implicit Submanifold Theorem)

Let M be a k-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n , and let $x \in M$. Then $\exists W \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ an open set containing x, and a smooth mapping $F: W \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^{n-k}$ which has maximal rank on W, such that $W \cap M = F^{-1}(0)$.

Proof

By Pheorem 44, $\exists \psi: U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k \to \mathbb{R}^n$ a local parameterization such that $x \in \psi(U)$, with

$$x^{l_j} = \psi^{l_j}(w) = w^j$$
 and $x^{m_j} = \psi^{m_j}(w) = \psi^{m_j}(x^{l_1}, \dots, x^{l_k})$

for some $\{l_1, \ldots, l_k\} \subseteq \{1, \ldots, n\}$ with complement $\{m_1, \ldots, m_{n-k}\}$. Then let $W \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ be the open set defined by

$$W = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : (x^{l_1}, \dots, x^{l_k}) \in U\},\$$

as define the smooth map $F: W \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^{n-k}$ by

$$F^{j}(x^{1},...,x^{n})=x^{m_{j}}-\psi^{m_{j}}(x^{l_{1}},...,x^{l_{k}}),$$

where j = 1, ..., n - k. By construction, we have that $W \cap M = F^{-1}(0)$.

Now note that the j^{th} row of $(D F)_x$ is $(D F^j)$, which has a 1 in

the m_i^{th} component and zeroes in the m_i^{th} components for $i \neq j$:

$$(DF)_{x} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial F^{1}}{\partial x^{1}} & \frac{\partial F^{1}}{\partial x^{2}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial F^{1}}{\partial x^{m_{j}}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial F^{1}}{\partial x^{n}} \\ \frac{\partial F^{2}}{\partial x^{1}} & \frac{\partial F^{2}}{\partial x^{2}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial F^{2}}{\partial x^{m_{j}}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial F^{2}}{\partial x^{n}} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial F^{m_{j}}}{\partial x^{1}} & \frac{\partial F^{m_{j}}}{\partial x^{2}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial F^{m_{j}}}{\partial x^{m_{j}}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial F^{m_{j}}}{\partial x^{n}} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial F^{n-k}}{\partial x^{1}} & \frac{\partial F^{n-k}}{\partial x^{2}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial F^{n-k}}{\partial x^{m_{j}}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial F^{n-k}}{\partial x^{n}} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial F^{1}}{\partial x^{1}} & \frac{\partial F^{1}}{\partial x^{2}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial F^{n-k}}{\partial x^{m_{j}}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial F^{n-k}}{\partial x^{n}} \\ \frac{\partial F^{2}}{\partial x^{1}} & \frac{\partial F^{2}}{\partial x^{2}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial F^{2}}{\partial x^{m_{j}}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial F^{n}}{\partial x^{n}} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial F^{m_{j}}}{\partial x^{1}} & \frac{\partial F^{m_{j}}}{\partial x^{2}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial F^{n-k}}{\partial x^{m_{j}}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial F^{n-k}}{\partial x^{n}} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial F^{1}}{\partial x^{1}} & \frac{\partial F^{m_{j}}}{\partial x^{2}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial F^{n-k}}{\partial x^{m_{j}}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial F^{n-k}}{\partial x^{n}} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial F^{n-k}}{\partial x^{1}} & \frac{\partial F^{n-k}}{\partial x^{2}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial F^{n-k}}{\partial x^{m_{j}}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial F^{n-k}}{\partial x^{n}} \end{pmatrix}$$

It follows that the n - k rows (D F^{j}) are therefore linearly independent, i.e. $(D F)_x$ has maximal rank n - k as required.

Smooth Functions and Curves on a Submanifold

E Definition 63 (Smooth Functions on Submanifolds)

Let $f: M \to \mathbb{R}$. We say that f is **smooth** if the composition $f \circ \varphi_{\alpha}$: $U_{\alpha} \to \mathbb{R}$ is a smooth function for any allowable local parameterization $\varphi_{\alpha}:U_{\alpha}\to\mathbb{R}^n$ of M (cf. Figure 19.1).

Let $F: M \to \mathbb{R}^q$ be a vector-valued map. We say that F is **smooth** if all the components $F^i: M \to \mathbb{R}$ are smooth real-valued functions on M, *for* i = 1, ..., q.

Remark 19.2.1

Note that smoothness of functions is a local property, i.e. a function f is smooth on M if and only if it is smooth on $V \cap M$ for every open set V in \mathbb{R}^n . U_{α} V_{α} V_{α} V_{β} V_{β} V_{β} V_{β}

Figure 19.1: Visual representation of smooth functions and curves on submanifolds

■ Definition 64 (Smooth Curve on a Submanifold)

Let $\gamma \in I \to M$, where $I \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ is open. We say that γ is a **smooth curve** in M if the composition $\varphi_{\alpha}^{-1} \circ \gamma : I \to \mathbb{R}^k$ is a smooth curve 1 on \mathbb{R}^k for any allowable local parameterization $\varphi_{\alpha} : U_{\alpha} \to \mathbb{R}^n$ (cf. Figure 19.1).

¹ Note that we are using an earlier definition of a smooth curve on \mathbb{R}^k to define a smooth curve on submanifolds.

\leftrightarrow Proposition 47 (Smooth Curves on a Submanifold is a Smooth Curve on \mathbb{R}^n)

Let $\gamma: I \to M$ be a smooth curve on M. Let $\iota: M \to \mathbb{R}^n$ be the inclusion map. Then $\iota \circ \gamma: I \to \mathbb{R}^n$ is a smooth curve on \mathbb{R}^n whose image lies in the subset $M \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$.

Remark 19.2.2

b Proposition 47 tells us that we can think of a smooth curve in M as a smooth curve on \mathbb{R}^n whose image lies in the subset $M \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$.

Proof

Let $t \in I$. Then we have

$$(\iota \circ \gamma)(t) = \gamma(t) = \varphi_{\alpha}((\varphi_{\alpha}^{-1} \circ \gamma)(t)),$$

since $\gamma(t) \in M \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$. Therefore, as a map from $I \to \mathbb{R}^n$, we have that

$$\iota \circ \gamma = \varphi_{\alpha} \circ (\varphi_{\alpha}^{-1} \circ \gamma).$$

By our hypothesis, we have that both $\varphi_{\alpha}:U_{\alpha}\subseteq\mathbb{R}^k\to\mathbb{R}^n$ and $\varphi_{\alpha}^{-1} \circ \gamma$ are both smooth, thus $\iota \circ \gamma : I \to \mathbb{R}^n$ is a composition of smooth maps.

Remark 19.2.3

It can be shown that the converse of \Diamond Proposition 47 holds, i.e. if $\gamma: I \to$ \mathbb{R}^n is a smooth map such that $\gamma(t) \in M$ for all $t \in I$, then as a map from Ito M, γ is a smooth curve in M as in the sense of \square Definition 64.

However, the proof of this statement is currently beyond is and not within the scope of this course.

♦ Proposition 48 (Composing a Smooth Function and a Smooth Curve)

Let M be a submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n . Let $f: M \to \mathbb{R}$ be a smooth function on M, and let $\gamma: I \to M$ be a smooth curve on M. Then the composition $f \circ \gamma : I \to \mathbb{R}^n$ is a smooth map in the usual sense in multivariable calculus.

Proof

For any $t \in I$, the point $p = \gamma(t) \in M$ lies in the image of some local parameterization φ_{α} of M. By \square Definition 64 and Definition 63 on M, we know that both

$$f \circ \varphi_{\alpha} : U_{\alpha} \to \mathbb{R}$$
 and $\varphi_{\alpha}^{-1} \circ \gamma : I \to \mathbb{R}^k$

are smooth. Then on some open neighbourhood of $t \in I$, we have

$$f \circ \varphi = (f \circ \varphi_{\alpha}) \circ (\varphi_{\alpha}^{-1} \circ \gamma),$$

which is a composition of smooth maps and is therefore smooth. It follows that $f \circ \gamma : I \to \mathbb{R}$ is smooth on I.

3 Tangent Vectors and Cotangent Vectors on a Submanifold

In a similar fashion to how we defined a tangent space on \mathbb{R}^n (cf. Section 8.1), in this section, we shall show an analogous construction of a tangent space on submanifolds.

Let $\varphi: U \to \mathbb{R}^n$ be a parameterization of M. From Section 8.1, we would have the k-dimensional subspace $T_{\varphi(u)}\mathbb{R}^n$ spanned by the k vectors

$$\frac{\partial \varphi}{\partial u^1}(u), \ldots, \frac{\partial \varphi}{\partial u^k}(u).$$

These vectors form the k columns of the $n \times k$ matrix $(D\varphi)_u$, i.e. $T_{\varphi(u)}\varphi(U)$ is the image of \mathbb{R}^n of the linear map $(D\varphi)_u$). More precisely, $T_{\varphi(u)}\varphi(U)$ is the image in $T_{\varphi(u)}\mathbb{R}^n$ of the linear map $(d\varphi)_u: T_u\mathbb{R}^k \to T_{\varphi(u)}\mathbb{R}^n$.

Lecture 20 Mar 04th

20.1 Tangent Vectors and Cotangent Vectors on a Submanifold (Continued)

Recall that in \square Definition 57 we defined the **tangent space** T_pM of M at p to be the tangent space of the parameterized submanifold $\varphi(U) \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ at $\varphi(u)$ for any local parameterization $\varphi: U \to \mathbb{R}^n$ of M with $p = \varphi(u)$.i

For this notion to be well-defined, we need to show that T_pM does not depend on the choice of the local parameterization.

♦ Proposition 49 (Well-Definedness of the Tangent Space of a Submanifold)

Let $\varphi_{\alpha}: U_{\alpha} \to \mathbb{R}^n$ and $\varphi_{\beta}: U_{\beta} \to \mathbb{R}^n$ be two local parameterizations for M with $p \in V_{\alpha} \cap V_{\beta} \cap M$. Then $p = \varphi_{\alpha}(u_{\alpha}) = \varphi_{\beta}(u_{\beta})$ for some unique $u_{\alpha} \in U_{\alpha}$ and $u_{\beta} \in U_{\beta}$. Then we have

$$T_{\varphi_{\alpha}(u_{\alpha})}\varphi_{\alpha}(U_{\alpha})=T_{\varphi_{\beta}(u_{\beta})}\varphi_{\beta}(U_{\beta}).$$

Proof

The first implication follows immediately from the choosing of the unique u_{α} and u_{α} since φ_{α} and φ_{β} are homeomorphisms.

Now recall that the transition map

$$\varphi_{\beta\alpha}: \varphi_{\alpha}^{-1}(V_{\alpha} \cap V_{\beta} \cap M) \to \varphi_{\beta}^{-1}(V_{\alpha} \cap V_{\beta} \cap M)$$

was defined to be $\varphi_{\beta\alpha} = \varphi_{\beta}^{-1} \circ \varphi_{\alpha}$, and we proved in \Diamond Proposition 42 that $\varphi_{\beta\alpha}$ is a diffeomorphism. It follows that

$$\varphi_{\beta} \circ \varphi_{\beta\alpha} = \varphi_{\alpha},$$

and so we obtain φ_{β} and φ_{α} , maps on the open subset $\varphi_{\alpha}^{-1}(V_{\alpha} \cap V_{\beta} \cap M) \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{k}$. By the chain rule, we have that

$$(d\varphi_{\alpha})_{u_{\alpha}} = (d\varphi_{\beta})_{u_{\beta}} (d\varphi_{\beta\alpha})_{u_{\alpha}}.$$

Since $\varphi_{\beta\alpha}$ is a diffeomorphism, it follows that the linear map

$$(d\varphi_{\beta\alpha})_{u_\alpha}:T_{u_\alpha}\mathbb{R}^k\to T_{u_\beta}\mathbb{R}^k$$

is an isomorphism, and therefore $(d\varphi_{\alpha})_{u_{\alpha}}$ and $(d\varphi_{\beta})_{u_{\beta}}$ have the same image in \mathbb{R}^n .

66 Note 20.1.1

Note that the proof of $\$ Proposition 49 is almost a restatement of Lemma 41. We see that, once again, the result says that the image of the induced linear map $(d\varphi)_u$ of a parameterization is independent of any parameterization such that $\varphi(u) = p$.

WE NOW consider characterizing elements of T_pM as velocity vectors at p of smooth curves of M passing through p, just as we did for \mathbb{R}^n .

■ Definition 65 (Velocity Vectors on a Submanifold)

Let $\gamma: I \to M$ be a smooth curve on M with $0 \in I$ and $\gamma(0) = p$. Then p lies in the image of at least one local parameterization $\varphi: U \to \mathbb{R}^n$ for M, with $\varphi(u) = p$ for some $u \in U$. The velocity vector of the smooth curve $\varphi^{-1} \circ \gamma: I \to \mathbb{R}^k$ on \mathbb{R}^k at the point u is a tangent vector $(\varphi^{-1} \circ \gamma)'(0) \in T_u \mathbb{R}^k$.

We define the velocity vector of γ at p to be the image of (φ^{-1} \circ

 $\gamma)'(0)$ under the linear map $(d\varphi)_u: T_u\mathbb{R}^k \to T_p\mathbb{R}^n$. We denote the velocity vector of γ at p by $\gamma'(0) \in T_{\gamma(0)}M$, and the velocity vector at pof a smooth curve on M passing through p is a tangent vector at p to M.

66 Note 20.1.2

The argument in the proof of **\leftrigorangle** Proposition 49 tells us that this definition is well-defined, i.e. the velocity vector on a point p is the same regardless of the choice of parameterization.

Remark 20.1.1

To explain the definition in a more intuitive manner, notice that the way we defined a velocity vector at p in M is by looking at the velocity vector of p when it was still u in U.

The have the following fact that makes our definition even better.

♦ Proposition 50 (All Velocity Vectors on a Submanifold are Determined by **E** Definition 65)

Let $v_p \in T_pM$. Then there exists a (non-unique) smooth curve $\gamma: I \to$ M on M with $0 \in I$ and $\gamma(0) = p$ such that $\gamma'(0) = v_p$. That is, any $v_p \in T_pM$ can be realized as the velocity at p of a sooth curve on M passing through p.

Proof

Let $\varphi: U \to \mathbb{R}^n$ be any local parameterization of M whose image contains p. Then $u = \varphi^{-1}(p) \in U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k$. Then $(d\varphi)_u : T_u\mathbb{R}^k \to$ $T_p\mathbb{R}^n$ is a linear injection, whose image is precisely T_pM . Let $v_p \in$ T_pM . Then $\exists! w_u \in T_u\mathbb{R}^k$ such that $(d\varphi)_u(W_u) = v_p$.

Now let σ be a smooth curve on \mathbb{R}^k with $\sigma(0) = u$ and $\sigma'(0) = u$ w_u . Notice that we have $\sigma = \varphi^{-1} \circ (\varphi \circ \sigma)$. Since σ and φ are

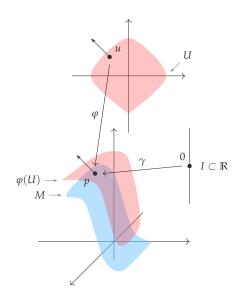


Figure 20.1: Borrowing the velocity vector

smooth, it follows that $\gamma = \varphi \circ \sigma$ is a smooth curve on M, with $\gamma(0) = \varphi(u) = p$ and $\gamma^{-1} = (d\varphi)_u(\sigma'(0)) = (d\varphi)_u(w_u) = v_p$.

66 Note 20.1.3

Recall that a smooth curve γ on $M \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ can be thought of as a smooth curve on \mathbb{R}^n whose image lies in M. Since T_pM is a subspace of $T_p\mathbb{R}^n$, \red Proposition 50 tells us that $\gamma'(0) \in T_pM$, as a curve on M, precisely coincides with the velocity of γ in $T_p\mathbb{R}^n$ when we think of γ as a smooth curve on \mathbb{R}^n .

Let's examine the consequences of the above observation. Let $\varphi: U \to \mathbb{R}^n$ be a local parameterization of M. If we fix all the components in $u \in U$ except the j^{th} component, we get exactly a smooth curve on M, which we called the j^{th} coordinate curve of φ . Once again, we can think of this as a smooth curve on \mathbb{R}^n whose image lies in M.

Let $p=\varphi(u)$, where $u=(u^1,\ldots,u^k)\in U\subseteq\mathbb{R}^k$. Then $\frac{\partial\varphi}{\partial u^l}(u)$ is a tangent vector to M at p. Let $\sigma:I\to\mathbb{R}^k$ be a smooth curve on \mathbb{R}^k such that $\sigma(t)\in U$ for all $t\in I$, and $\sigma(0)=u$. Then as discussed above, $\varphi\circ\sigma$ is a smooth curve on M, which can be thought of as a smooth curve on \mathbb{R}^n whose image lies in M, with $(\varphi\circ\sigma)(u)=p$. By the chain rule, we have

$$\gamma'(0) = \frac{\partial \varphi}{\partial u^j}(\sigma(0)) \frac{du^j}{dt}(0) = c^j = \frac{\partial \varphi}{\partial u^j}(u)$$

for some scalars c^{j} . We see that $T_{p}M$ is spanned by the k elements of the set

$$A = \left\{ \frac{\partial \varphi}{\partial u^j}(u) : j = 1, \dots, k \right\},\,$$

which is the set of velocity vectors at p of the coordinate curves on M as determined by the local parameterization φ . Since T_pM is k-dimensional, A is necessarily a basis for T_pM .

We see that for each choice of a local parameterization φ of M whose image contains p determines a particular basis of T_pM . Thus

we see that there is no canonical choice for a local parameterization.

Now let us consider tangent vectors as derivations. The set of realvalued functions on M is both a vector space and an algebra with respect to multiplication of real-valued functions, i.e. (fg)(p) =f(p)g(p) ¹. We denote this space as $C^{\infty}(M)$.

As before, let us denote the set of germs of smooth functions at p as $C_p \infty(M)$, where $f \sim_p g$ if and only if $\exists V \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ open that contains p, such that

$$f \upharpoonright_{V \cap M} = g \upharpoonright_{V \cap M}$$
.

Just as when we were in \mathbb{R}^n , $C_v^{\infty}(M)$ is an algebra over \mathbb{R}^2 .

Definition 66 (Derivation on Submanifolds)

Let M be a submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n and let $p \in M$. A derivation at p is a linear map $\mathcal{D}: C_p^{\infty}(M) \to \mathbb{R}$ with the property that

$$\mathcal{D}([f]_p[g]_p) = f(p)\mathcal{D}[g]_p + g(p)\mathcal{D}[f]_p.$$

66 Note 20.1.4

📃 Definition 66 is formally the same as 📃 Definition 35.

Exercise 20.1.2

Check that the space of derivations at p is indeed a real vector space.

Exercise 20.1.1

Verify that linear combinations of products of smooth real-valued functions on M are still smooth.

² Note again that this means that $C_p^{\infty}(M)$ is a real vector space with multiplication.



21.1 Tangent Vectors and Cotangent Vectors on a Submanifold (Continued 2)

The space of germs of smooth functions on M at p only depends on the intersection of M with an arbitrary open neighbourhood of p in \mathbb{R}^n .

Exercise 21.1.1

Let M be a submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n and $p \in M$. Let V be an open subset of \mathbb{R}^n containing p. We know that the subset $V \cap M$ is a submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n containing p. Show that

$$C_p^{\infty}(M) = C_p^{\infty}(V \cap M).$$

♣ Lemma 51 (Correspondence of Smooth Maps between a Submanifold and Its parameterization)

Let M be a submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n , and $\varphi: U \to M$ a local parameterization of M. Then $\varphi(U) = V \cap M$ for some open set V in \mathbb{R}^n containing p. Consider the map

$$\iota: C_p^{\infty}(V \cap M) \to C_p^{\infty}(U)$$
 given by $f \mapsto f \circ \varphi$.

This map is a linear isomorphism of vector spaces and a homomorphism of algebras.

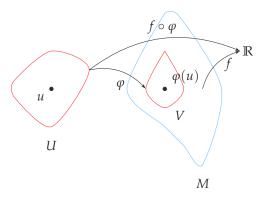


Figure 21.1: Visualization of Lemma 51

Proof

Linearity Let $f,g \in C^{\infty}(V \cap M)$ and $t,s \in \mathbb{R}$. Then

$$(tf + sg) \circ \varphi = t(f \circ \varphi) + s(g \circ \varphi)$$

and so the map is linear.

Homomorphism of algebras Furthermore, we also have

$$(fg) \circ \varphi = (f \circ \varphi)(g \circ \varphi),$$

and so we have that our map is a homomorphism of algebras.

Isomorphism of Vector Spaces Let $f \in C\infty(V \cap M)$ be such that $f \circ \varphi : U \to \mathbb{R}$ is the zero function. Since $\varphi : U \to V \cap M$ is a bijection, it follows that

$$f=(f\circ\varphi)\circ\varphi^{-1}$$

is a zero function, thus showing that ι is injective.

Now suppose $h \in C^{\infty}(U)$. Then

$$h = (h \circ \varphi^{-1}) \circ \varphi,$$

and by definition $h \circ \varphi^{-1} : V \cap M \to \mathbb{R}$ is smooth since h is smooth on U. It follows that ι is injective as well.

Corollary 52 (Isomorphism Between Algebra of Germs)

Consider the assumptions in Lemma 51. Let $p \in V \cap M$ with $p = \varphi(u)$ for $u \in U$. Then the linear isomorphism $C^{\infty}(V \cap M) \to C^{\infty}(U)$ given by $f\mapsto f\circ \varphi$ induces an isomorphism between the algebra of germs $C_p^\infty(M)$ at $p \in M$ and the algebra of terms $C_u^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^k)$ at $u \in \mathbb{R}^k$, given by

$$[f]_p \mapsto [f \circ \varphi]_u$$
.

Proof

Let $f_1 \sim_u f_2$. Then $\exists W \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ such that $p \in W$ such that

$$f_1 \upharpoonright_{W \cap M} = f_2 \upharpoonright_{W \cap M}$$
.

Let $\tilde{U} = \varphi^{-1}(W \cap V) \subseteq U$. Since φ is continuous and $W \cap V$ is open, we have that \tilde{U} is open. Since $\varphi(\tilde{U}) \subseteq W$, we have

$$(f_1 \circ \varphi) \upharpoonright_{\tilde{U}} = (f_2 \circ \varphi)_{\tilde{U}}.$$

It follows that $[f_1 \circ \varphi]_u = [f_2 \circ \varphi]_u$ if $[f_1]_p = [f_2]_p$. Thus, the map $[f]_p \mapsto [f \circ \varphi]_u$ is well-defined.

It remains to show that the map is bijective. Let $[h]_u \in C_u^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^k)$. Then h is a smooth function defined on some open neighbourhood $\tilde{U} \subseteq U$ of u. Then by restricting φ to \tilde{U} , following the proof of Lemma 51, we have that $h = (h \circ \varphi^{-1}) \circ \varphi$. Thus $[h]_u \in C_u^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^k)$ is the image of $[h \circ \varphi^{-1}]_p \in C_p^{\infty}(M)$. Thus our map is surjective.

Now if $[f \circ \varphi]_u = 0$, then $f \circ \varphi$ is identically zero on some open neighbourhood $\tilde{U} \subseteq U$ of u. Since φ is a bijection from \tilde{U} onto its image, f must be identically zero on some open neighbourhood $\varphi(\tilde{U})$ of p. It follows that our map is an isomorphism, as required.

66 Note 21.1.1

We see that a local parameterization $\varphi: U \to V \cap M$ allows us to identify germs of smooth functions on M at p with germs of smooth functions on

U at
$$u = \varphi^{-1}(p)$$
.

WE SHALL NOW investigate how is the tangent space T_pM of M at p precisely the space of derivations at p. Let M be a submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n and let $p \in M$.

Let φ be a local parameterization of M whose image contains $p = \varphi(u)$. Again, we have $\varphi(U) = V \cap M$ for some open $V \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$, and $V \cap M$ is a submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n , containing p. Let

$$L_{\varphi}: C_p^{\infty}(M) \to C_u^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^k)$$

be the isomorphism of algebras from Corollary 52, given by

$$L_{\varphi}([f]_p) = [f \circ \varphi]_u.$$

Now let $\mathcal{D}: C_p^{\infty}(M) \to \mathbb{R}$ be a derivation. Then $\mathcal{D} \circ L_{\varphi}^{-1}: C_u^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^k) \to \mathbb{R}$ is linear. Furthermore, since \mathcal{D} is a derivation and L_{φ}^{-1} is a homomorphism of algebras, we have

$$\begin{split} \mathcal{D} \circ L_{\varphi}^{-1}([h_{1}]_{u}[h_{2}]_{u}) &= \mathcal{D}(L_{\varphi}^{-1}([h_{1}]_{u}[h_{2}]_{u})) \\ &= \mathcal{D}([h_{1} \circ \varphi^{-1}]_{p}[h_{2} \circ \varphi^{-1}]_{p}) \\ &= (h_{1} \circ \varphi^{-1})(p)\mathcal{D}[h_{2} \circ \varphi^{-1}]_{p} \\ &\quad + (h_{2} \circ \varphi^{-1})(p)\mathcal{D}[h_{1} \circ \varphi^{-1}]_{p} \\ &= h_{1}(u)(\mathcal{D} \circ L_{\varphi}^{-1})[h_{2}]_{u} + h_{2}(u)(\mathcal{D} \circ L_{\varphi}^{-1})[h_{1}]_{u}. \end{split}$$

Thus we see that $\mathcal{D} \circ L_{\varphi}^{-1}$ is a derivation at u. By \square Theorem 28, we know that $\mathcal{D} \circ L_{\varphi}^{-1}$ is a tangent vector at u in \mathbb{R}^k , i.e. $\mathcal{D} \circ L_{\varphi}^{-1}$ is a directional derivative in some direction $w_u \in T_u \mathbb{R}^k$.

This means that if we let $[f]_p \in C_p^{\infty}(M)$, then $\exists \tilde{V} \subseteq V$ of p in \mathbb{R}^n such that $f: \tilde{V} \cap M \to \mathbb{R}$ is a smooth function on $\tilde{V} \cap M$. Thus we

have

$$\mathcal{D}[f]_{p} = \mathcal{D}[(f \circ \varphi) \circ \varphi^{-1}]_{p}$$

$$= \mathcal{D}L_{\varphi}^{-1}[f \circ \varphi]_{u}$$

$$= w_{u}(f \circ \varphi)$$

$$= \lim_{t \to 0} \frac{(f \circ \varphi)(u + tw) - (f \circ \varphi)(u)}{t}$$

$$= \lim_{t \to 0} \frac{f(\varphi(u + tw)) - f(p)}{t}.$$

Consider $\gamma(t) = \varphi(u + tw)$, which is, by construction, a smooth curve on M with $\gamma(0) = p$ and $\gamma'(0) = (d\varphi)_u(w_u)$. Note that this is a velocity vector v_p in M at p. Thus it makes sense to consider the expression $\mathcal{D}[f]_p$ above as the directional derivative in the v_p $(d\varphi)_u w_u \in T_p M$ direction of the smooth function f on M at the point р.

This motivates us to define, $\forall v_p \in T_p M$, and any $[f]_p \in C_p^{\infty}(M)$,

$$v_p(f) = \lim_{t \to 0} \frac{f(\varphi(u + tw)) - f(p)}{t}$$
$$= w_u(f \circ \varphi) = ((d\varphi)_u^{-1}(v_p))(f \circ \varphi). \tag{21.1}$$

We have therefore proven the following theorem:

Theorem 53 (Derivations are Tangent Vectors Even on Submanifolds)

Let M be a submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n and $p \in M$. Any tangent vector $v_p \in$ T_pM gives a derivation $v_p:C_p\infty(M)\to\mathbb{R}$, defined by

$$v_p(f) = ((d\varphi)_u^{-1}(v_p))(f \circ \varphi)$$

for any local parameterization $\varphi: U \to \mathbb{R}^n$ of M such that $\varphi(u) = p$. Moreover, any derivation $\mathcal{D}: C_p^\infty(M) \to \mathbb{R}$ is of this form for a unique $v_p \in T_pM$.

Exercise 21.1.2

Show that $f \mapsto ((d\varphi)_u^{-1}(v_p))(f \circ \varphi)$ is a derivation. Moreover, show that the map is independent of the local parameterization φ , i.e. if $\exists \tilde{\varphi}$ another local parameterization of M with $\tilde{\varphi}(\tilde{u}) = p$, then show that

$$((d\varphi)_u^{-1}(v_p))(f\circ\varphi)=((d\tilde\varphi)_u^{-1}(v_p))(f\circ\tilde\varphi).$$

🖊 Lecture 22 Mar 08th

Tangent Vectors and Cotangent Vectors on a Submanifold (Continued 3)

Example 22.1.1

Let φ be a local parameterization of M with $p=\varphi(u)$, and the tangent vector $\frac{\partial \varphi}{\partial u^j}(u) \in T_p M$ given by the velocity at p of the j^{th} coordinate curve on M induced by φ . Note that $\frac{\partial \varphi}{\partial u^j}(u)=(d\varphi)_u(\hat{e}_j)_u$. Then by Equation (21.1), we have

$$\frac{\partial \varphi}{\partial u^{j}}(u)(f) = (\hat{e}_{j})_{u}(f \circ \varphi) = \frac{\partial}{\partial u^{j}}\Big|_{u}(f \circ \varphi),$$

which is the partial derivative of $f \circ \varphi$ at u in the \hat{e}_j direction . Because of this, we shall write this tangent vector $\frac{\partial \varphi}{\partial u^j}(u)$ as $\frac{\partial}{\partial u^j}\Big|_p \in T_pM$.

Thus

$$\left\{\frac{\partial}{\partial u^1}\Big|_{p'},\ldots,\frac{\partial}{\partial u^j}\Big|_{p}\right\}$$

is a basis of T_pM , but this depends on the choice of parameterization.

•

22.2 Smooth Vector Fields and Forms on a Submanifold

One should notice how similar these parts is to Part II

■ Definition 67 (Cotangent Space on a Submanifold)

Let $p \in M$. Let $T_p^*M = (T_pM)^*$ be the dual space of T_pM . We call T_p^*M

the cotangent space of M at p.

Following Part II, we can consider the space $\Lambda^r(T_p^*M)$ of r-forms on the k-dimensional real vector space T_pM .

Again, we note that we look at a vector field as a function that attaches a vector to each point in the space.

See also <a> Definition 11

■ Definition 68 (Vector Fields on Submanifold)

A vector field on M is a map $X: M \to \bigcup_{q \in M} T_q M$ such that

$$X(p) = X_p \in T_p M, \quad \forall p \in M.$$

■ Definition 69 (Forms on Submanifolds)

An r-form on M is a map $\eta: M \to \bigcup_{q \in M} \Lambda^r(T_q^*M)$ such that

$$\eta(p) = \eta_p \in \Lambda^r(T_p^*M), \quad \forall p \in M.$$

66 Note 22.2.1

Note that since $\Lambda^0(T_p^*M) = \mathbb{R}$, a 0-form on M is just a real-valued function on M.

Remark 22.2.1

Given a vector field X on M and a smooth function f on M, we get a function $Xf: M \to \mathbb{R}$ defined by $(Xf)(p) = X_p f$, where $X_p \in T_p M$ is a derivation at p^{-1} . If η is an r-form with $r \ge 1$, then given any r vector fields X_1, \ldots, X_r on M, we have that $\eta(X_1, \ldots, X_r) : M \to \mathbb{R}$ is a function given by

$$(\eta(X_1,\ldots,X_r))(p)=\eta_p((X_1)_p,\ldots,(X_r)_p).$$

¹ We saw this in ■Theorem 53.

■ Definition 70 (Wedge Product on Submanifolds)

Let η be an r-form on M and let ζ be an l-form on M. We define the wedge product $\eta \wedge \zeta$, an (r+l)-form on M, by

$$(\eta \wedge \zeta)_p = \eta_p \wedge \zeta_p,$$

where the wedge product on the RHS is the usual wedge product of forms on the vector space T_pM .

66 Note 22.2.2

We still have that

$$\eta \wedge \zeta = (-1)^{|\eta||\zeta|} \zeta \wedge \eta.$$

■ Definition 71 (Smooth Vector Fields on Submanifolds)

We say that a vector field X is **smooth** on M if $Xf \in C^{\infty}(M)$ for all $f \in C^{\infty}(M)$. We denote the set of smooth vector fields on M by $\Gamma(TM)$.

Definition 72 (Smooth 0-forms on Submanifolds)

For a 0-form $h: M \to \mathbb{R}$, we say that h is **smooth** if it is smooth by **Definition** 63. We denote the set of smooth 0-forms on M both by $C^{\infty}(M)$ and $\Omega^{0}(M)$.

■ Definition 73 (Smooth *r*-forms on Submanifolds)

For $1 \le r \le k$, an r-form η on M is smooth if

$$\eta(X_1,\ldots,X_r)\in C^{\infty}(M), \quad \forall X_1,\ldots,X_r\in\Gamma(TM).$$

We denote the set of smooth r-forms on M by $\Omega^r(M) = \Gamma(\Lambda^r(T^*M))$.

Remark 22.2.2

From Remark 19.2.1, we know that smoothness of vector fields and forms is a local property. In other words, a vector field X is smooth on M iff it is smooth on $V \cap M$ for every open V in \mathbb{R}^n , and similarly so for an r-form η .

Example 22.2.1 ()

Let $\varphi: U \to \mathbb{R}^n$ be a local parameterization for M with image $V \cap M$. Let $p \in V \cap M$ with $p = \varphi(u)$. Recall that the tangent vector $\frac{\partial}{\partial u^j}{}_p \in T_pM$ was defined to be $(d\varphi)_u(\hat{e}_j)_u$, where $(\hat{e}_j)_u \in T_u\mathbb{R}^k$ is the j^{th} standard basis vector.

Define a vector field $\frac{\partial}{\partial u^j}$ on the submanifold $V \cap M$ by letting its value at $p \in V \cap M$ be $\frac{\partial}{\partial u^j}\Big|_v$. That is, let

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial u^j}\Big|_p = (d\varphi)_u(\hat{e}_j)_u$$
, where $u = \varphi^{-1}(p)$.

Claim $\frac{\partial}{\partial u^j}$ is a smooth vector field on $V \cap M$. To show this, let $f \in C^{\infty}(V \cap M)$. By Example 22.1.1, we have

$$\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial u^j}f\right)(p) = \left(\frac{\partial(f\circ\varphi)}{\partial u^j}\right)(u) = \left(\frac{\partial(f\circ\varphi)}{\partial u^j}\circ\varphi^{-1}\right)(p).$$

We see that the function $\frac{\partial}{\partial u^j}f:V\cap M\to\mathbb{R}$ is the function $g=\frac{\partial (f\circ\varphi)}{\partial u^j}\circ\varphi^{-1}$. Notice that $g\circ\varphi=\frac{\partial (f\circ\varphi)}{\partial u^j}$ is smooth on U. Thus the function g is smooth by \square Definition 63. It follows that $\frac{\partial}{\partial u^j}$ is a smooth vector field on $V\cap M$.

\leftrightarrow Proposition 54 (Structures of $\Gamma(TM)$ and $\Omega^r(M)$)

We know that the spaces $\Gamma(TM)$ and $\Omega^r(M)$ are (infinite-dimensional) real vector spaces, and modules over $C^{\infty}(M)$. The vector space structure and module structure are defined in the usual way by

$$(aX + bY)_p = aX_p + bY_p, (fX)_p = f(p)X_p$$
$$(a\eta + b\zeta)_p = a\eta_p + b\zeta_p, (f\eta)_p = f(p)\eta_p,$$

for all $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$, $X, Y \in \Gamma(TM)$, $\eta \zeta \in \Omega^{r}(M)$, and $f \in C^{\infty}(M)$.

Proof

to be added

♦ Proposition 55 (Smoothness of Wedge Products on Submanifolds)

Let $\eta \in \Omega^r(M)$ and $\zeta \in \Omega^l(M)$. Then $\eta \wedge \zeta \in \Omega^{r+l}(M)$.

Proof

For an arbitrary $p \in M$, by \blacksquare Definition 70, we have that

$$(\eta \wedge \zeta)_p = \eta_p \wedge \zeta_p.$$

By \blacksquare Definition 47, since each η and ζ are smooth, it follows that the RHS is also smooth, which is what we want.

■ Definition 74 (Pullback Maps on Submanifolds)

Let M be a submanifold on \mathbb{R}^n , and let $\varphi: U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k \to \mathbb{R}^k$ be a local parameterization for M. Then φ is a smooth map, and it induces a linear isomorphism $(d\varphi)_u: T_u\mathbb{R}^k \to T_{\varphi(u)}M$. We define the pullback map as

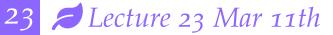
$$\varphi^* = (d\varphi)_u^* : \Lambda^r(T_{\varphi(u)}^*M) \to \Lambda^r(T_u^*\mathbb{R}^k),$$

where if η is an r-form on M, then $\phi^*\eta$ is an r-form on U such that

$$(\varphi^*\eta)_u((W_1)_u,\ldots,(W_r)_u) = \eta_{\varphi(u)}((d\varphi)_u(W_1)_u,\ldots,(d\varphi)_u(W_r)_u),$$
(22.1)

for tangent vectors $(W_1)_u, \ldots, (W_r)_u \in T_u \mathbb{R}^k$.

Since $(d\varphi)_u: T_u\mathbb{R}^k \to T_pM$ is an isomorphism, the map φ^* is also an isomorphism.



Smooth Vector Fields and Forms on a Submanifold (Continued)

Lemma 56 (Smoothness of Pullbacks and Forms)

Suppose that η is an r-form on M. then η is smooth iff the pullback $\phi^*\eta$ is a smooth r-form on U for every local parameterization $\varphi:U o\mathbb{R}^n$ of Μ.

Proof

Let $\{\hat{e}_1,\ldots,\hat{e}_k\}$ be the standard smooth vector fields on \mathbb{R}^k . We want to show that $(\varphi^*\eta)(\hat{e}_{l_1},\ldots,\hat{e}_{l_r})$ is a smooth function on U for all $1 \le l_1 < \ldots < l_r < \le k$ iff η is smooth. From Equation (22.1), we have

$$(\varphi^*\eta)_u((\hat{e}l_1)_u,\ldots,(\hat{e}_{l_r})_u) = \eta_{\varphi(u)}((d\varphi)_u(\hat{e}_{l_1})_u,\ldots,(d\varphi)_u(\hat{e}_{l_r})_u).$$
(23.1)

In Example 22.2.1, we saw that the vector field $\frac{\partial}{\delta u^j}$ on $V \cap M$ given by

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial u^j}\Big|_{p} = (d\varphi)_{u}(\hat{e}_j)_{u}$$

Recall from much earlier on that any smooth vector fields on \mathbb{R}^k is expressible as a linear combination of $\{\hat{e}_1,\ldots,\hat{e}_k\}$. So, for Lemma 56 it suffices for us to show that the statement holds for these guys.

was smooth on $V \cap M$. Thus Equation (23.1) becomes

$$(\varphi^*\eta)_u((\hat{e}_{l_1})_u,\dots,(\hat{e}_{l_r})_u) = \eta_p \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial u^{l_1}}\Big|_p,\dots,\frac{\partial}{\partial u^{l_r}}\Big|_p\right)$$

$$= \left(\eta \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial u^{l_1}},\dots,\frac{\partial}{\partial u^{l_r}}\right)\right)(p)$$

$$= \left(\eta \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial u^{l_1}},\dots,\frac{\partial}{\partial u^{l_r}}\right)\right)(\varphi(u)).$$

Thus, we see that

$$(\varphi^*\eta)(\hat{e}_{l_1},\ldots,\hat{e}_{l_r}) = \left(\eta\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial u^{l_1}},\ldots,\frac{\partial}{\partial u^{l_r}}\right)\right) \circ \varphi: U \to M. \quad (23.2)$$

We see that, under the definitions \blacksquare Definition 63 and \blacksquare Definition 73, and the fact that each of the $\frac{\partial}{\partial u^j}$'s are smooth on $V \cap M$, Equation (23.2) is smooth iff η is smooth on η is smooth on $V \cap M$.

Now recall that transition maps are diffeomorphic.

Lemma 57 (Composition of Pullbacks of Transition Maps and parameterizations)

Let $\varphi_{\alpha}: U_{\alpha} \to V_{\alpha} \cap M$ and $\varphi_{\beta}: U_{\beta} \to V_{\beta} \cap M$ be two local parameterizations for M such that $V_{\alpha} \cap V_{\beta} \cap M \neq \emptyset$. Let η be a smooth r-form on M. Then

$$\varphi_{\beta\alpha}^* \varphi_{\beta}^* \eta = \varphi_{\alpha}^* \eta. \tag{23.3}$$



Notice that we have $\varphi_{\beta} \circ \varphi_{\beta\alpha} = \varphi_{\alpha}$. Thus

$$\varphi_{\beta\alpha}^* \varphi_{\beta}^* \eta == (\varphi_{\beta} \circ \varphi_{\beta\alpha})^* \eta = \varphi_{\alpha}^* \eta.$$

Corollary 58 (*r*-forms on a Submanifold and Its parameterizations are Equivalent)

A smooth r-form η on M is equivalent to the smooth η_{α} on each U_{α} , an

Corollary 58 tells us that the *r*-forms on *M* stays consistent across the different parameterizations, and this equivalence comes from the transition map between parameterizations.

allowable local parameterization of M, subject to the compatibility relation that

$$\varphi_{\beta\alpha}^*\eta_{\beta}=\eta_{\alpha}.$$



We may choose $\eta_{\alpha}=\varphi_{\alpha}^{*}\eta.$ Then by choosing $\eta_{\beta}=\varphi_{\alpha}^{*}\eta,$ we can apply Lemma 57 and Lemma 56 and complete our proof.

Remark 23.1.1

Note that if M can be covered by the image of a single parameterization φ : $U \to \mathbb{R}^n$, then Corollary 58 says that a smooth r-form η on $M = \varphi(U)$ is equivalent to a smooth r-form $\phi^*\eta$ on U, since there the compatibility relation is trivially satisfied.

■ Definition 75 (Exterior Derivative on Submanifolds)

Let M be a k-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n . Let $\eta \in \Omega^r(M)$. Then we define the exterior derivative of η as $d\eta \in \Omega^{r+1}(M)$, given by

$$\varphi_{\alpha}^* \, d\eta = d\varphi_{\alpha}^* \eta \tag{23.4}$$

for any local parameterization φ_{α} of M.

66 Note 23.1.1

The d on the RHS is the usual exterior derivative on $\Omega^r(U_\alpha)$.

Remark 23.1.2

It appears that 📃 Definition 75 was defined to be dependent on the choice of parameterization. However, if we make use of \(\bigcirc \text{Proposition 40} \) and

170 Lecture 23 Mar 11th - Smooth Vector Fields and Forms on a Submanifold (Continued)

Equation (23.3), we can compute

$$d\varphi_{\alpha}^*\eta = d\varphi_{\beta\alpha}^*\varphi_{\beta}^*\eta = \varphi_{\beta\alpha}^*d\varphi_{\beta}^*\eta.$$

We also have that

$$\varphi_{\alpha}^* d\eta = \varphi_{\beta\alpha}^* \varphi_{\beta}^* d\eta,$$

which we see that it agrees with > Corollary 58.

• Proposition 59 (Square of the exterior derivative is a zero map on submanifolds)

The operator $d:\Omega^r(M)\to\omega^{r+1}(M)$ is linear and satisfies $d^2=0$ and

$$d(\eta \wedge \zeta) = (d\eta) \wedge \zeta + (-1)^{|\eta|} \eta \wedge (d\zeta).$$



This is essentially just restating ■Theorem 39 and ♦ Proposition 13.□

Our current goal is to define integration. However, there are certain submanifolds that we cannot have a sensible definition for integration. This section give us the basics to understand why integrability cannot be defined on these submanifolds.

In particular, we shall see that not every submanifold can be endowed with an orientation.

24.1 Orientability and Orientation of Submanifolds

Recall that in \blacksquare Definition 18 we defined an orientation of a kdimensional real vector space V as a choice of a nonzero element $\mu \in \Lambda^k(V)$, up to scaling by a positive real number. Equivalently so, it is an equivalence class of ordered bases of V.

There is a correspondence between the two characterizations: if $\mathcal{B} = \{e_1, \dots e_k\}$ is an ordered basis of V, then the orientation it determines is the equivalence class $\mu = e_1 \wedge ... \wedge e_k \in \Lambda^k(V)$. Furthermore, we saw, in Section 3.1.1 that an orientation on V is equivalent to an orientation on its dual space V^* .

By the above notes, we know that an orientation on V is equivalent to an nonzero elements $\mu \in \Lambda^k(V^*)$, where $\mu \sim \tilde{\mu}$ iff $\tilde{\mu} = \lambda \mu$, where $\lambda > 0$.

We shall apply the above ideas to k-dimensional submanifolds of \mathbb{R}^n . The main idea is to attach an orientation to each tangent space $T_v M$ of M^1 , in a "smoothly varying way". Since an orientation of T_pM corresponds to a non-zero element $\mu_p \in \Lambda^k(T_p^*M)$, we give the

¹ Note that we cannot attach an orientation on M itself without taking about its tangent space T_vM , because T_vM describes exactly how points of M 'move around'.

following definition.

■ Definition 76 (Orientable Submanifolds)

Let M be a k-dimensional submanifold on \mathbb{R}^n . We say that M is orientable if there exist a nowhere vanishing smooth k-form on M, i.e. $\exists \mu \in \Omega^k(M)$ such that $\mu_p \neq 0$ for all $p \in M$.

Submanifolds that are not orientable are said to be non-orientable.

66 Note 24.1.1

Suppose M is orientable and let μ and $\tilde{\mu}$ be two nowhere vanishing k-forms on M. Then $\exists f \in C^{\infty}(M)$ such that $\tilde{\mu} = f\mu$. We say that $\mu \sim \tilde{\mu}$ if f > 0, i.e. f(p) > 0 for all $p \in M$. This is, quite clearly, an equivalence relation.

Thus, an *orientation* on an orientable M is a choice of equivalence class $[\mu]$ of nowhere vainishing smooth k-forms on M.

Example 24.1.1

Let U be open in \mathbb{R}^k , and let $\varphi:U\to\mathbb{R}^n$ be a single parameterization. Then $M=\varphi(U)$ is a k-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n . By Remark 23.1.1, a k-form μ on $M=\varphi(U)$ is equivalent to a k-form $\varphi^*\mu$ on U.

Following that, we may define a k-form μ on M by requiring $\varphi^*\mu=du^1\wedge\ldots\wedge du^k$. Since $(\varphi^*\mu)_u\neq 0_u$ for all $u\in U^2$, we must have that $\mu_p\neq 0$ for all $p\in M$. Thus, for any $p\in M$, we can define an orientation on T_p^*M by taking the equivalence class of $[\mu_p]$. This means that given an ordered basis $\{\alpha_p^1,\ldots,\alpha_p^k\}$ of T_p^*M , it induces an orientation μ_p on T_p^*M iff

$$\alpha_p^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge \alpha_p^k = \lambda \mu_p$$

for some $\lambda > 0$ (by \blacksquare Definition 76).

² How do we know this?

This is called the orientation on $M = \varphi(U)$ induced by the parameterization φ .

In particular, the above example tells us that any submanifold that can be covered by a single parameterization is always orientable, and the parameterization provides a preferred orientation.

■ Definition 77 (Compatible Orientation)

Let M be a k-dimensional submanifold. Suppose that M is orientable and let μ be an orientation for M. Let $\varphi: U \to M$ be a local parameterization for M with image $V \cap M$. Let v be the orientation on $W \cap M$ given by φ , where $W \subseteq V$. If the coordinates on W are u^1, \ldots, u^n , then we have $\varphi^*\nu=du^1\wedge\ldots\wedge du^k.$

On $V \cap M$, we would have $v = f\mu$ for some nowhere vanishing $f \in$ $C^{\infty}(V \cap M)$. We say that the local parameterization φ is *compatible* with the orientation μ if f > 0 everywhere on $V \cap M$.

66 Note 24.1.2

The above definition says that the two nowhere vanishing k-forms μ and v on $V \cap M$ are equivalent, i.e. they determine the same orientation on T_pM for each $p \in V \cap M$.

♦ Proposition 60 (Compatibility of Parameterizations with the **Orientation**)

Let M be an orientable k-dimensional submanifold, and let u be a nowhere vanishing k-form on M. Suppose that φ and $\tilde{\varphi}$ are two local parameterizations for M, with respective images $V \cap M$ and $\tilde{V} \cap M$, with $V \cap \tilde{V} \cap M \neq \emptyset$.

Then the transition map

$$H: \tilde{\varphi}^{-1} \circ \varphi: \tilde{\varphi}^{-1}(V \cap \tilde{V} \cap M) \to \varphi^{-1}(V \cap \tilde{V} \cap M)$$

is a diffeomorphism. Furthermore, if φ and $\tilde{\varphi}$ are both compatible with μ , then $\det(DH) > 0$ everywhere on the domain of H.

Proof

The transition map H is a diffeomorphism by \bigcirc Proposition 42.

By our assumption, we may let ν and $\tilde{\nu}$ be the orientation on $V\cap M$ and \tilde{V} capM induced by φ and $\tilde{\varphi}$ respectively. In particular, we have that

$$\varphi^* \nu = du^1 \wedge ... \wedge du^k$$
, and $\mu = f\nu$ on $V \cap M$ for some $f > 0$,

and

$$\tilde{\varphi}^*\tilde{v} = d\tilde{u}^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge d\tilde{u}^k$$
, and $\mu = \tilde{f}\tilde{v}$ on $\tilde{V} \cap M$ for some $\tilde{f} > 0$

By Lemma 57, we have

$$H^*\tilde{\varphi}^*\mu=\varphi^*\mu.$$

Now on $V \cap M$, we have that $\mu = f\nu$, and so on $\varphi^{-1}(V \cap M)$ we have

$$\varphi^*\mu = \varphi^*(f\nu) = (f \circ \varphi)\varphi^*\nu = (f \circ \varphi) du^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge du^k,$$

where $\varphi^* f = f \circ \varphi$ by \blacksquare Definition 50.

Similarly, on $\tilde{V}\cap M$, we have $\mu=\tilde{f}\tilde{v}$, and so on $\tilde{\varphi}^{-1}(\tilde{V}\cap M)$ we have

$$\tilde{\varphi}^*\mu = \tilde{\varphi}^*(\tilde{f}\tilde{v}) = (\tilde{f}\circ\tilde{\varphi})\tilde{\varphi}^*\tilde{v} = (\tilde{f}\circ\tilde{\varphi})\,d\tilde{u}^1\wedge\ldots\wedge d\tilde{u}^k.$$

It follows that on $\varphi^{-1}(V \cap \tilde{V} \cap M)$, we have

$$(f \circ \varphi) du^{1} \wedge \ldots \wedge du^{k} = \varphi^{*} \mu = H^{*} \tilde{\varphi}^{*} \mu$$

$$= H^{*} (\tilde{f} \circ \tilde{\varphi}) d\tilde{u}^{1} \wedge \ldots \wedge d\tilde{u}^{k}$$

$$= (\tilde{f} \circ \tilde{\varphi} \circ H) H^{*} (d\tilde{u}^{1} \wedge \ldots \wedge d\tilde{u}^{k}).$$

Thus, we see that

$$(f \circ \varphi) du^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge du^k = (\tilde{f} \circ \varphi) H^* (d\tilde{u}^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge d\tilde{u}^k).$$

In A3Q2, we show(ed) that $H^*(d\tilde{u}^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge d\tilde{u}^k) = \det(\mathrm{D}\,H)\,du^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge d\tilde{u}^k$ $... \wedge du^k$. Follow that, we have

$$(f \circ \varphi) du^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge du^k = (\tilde{f} \circ \varphi) \det(DH) du^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge du^k.$$

Since $f, \tilde{f} > 0$, it follows that we must have $\det(DH) > 0$.



25.1 Orientability and Orientation of Submanifolds (Continued)

♦ Proposition 61 (Non-orientability Checker)

Let M be a k-dimensional submanifold. Suppose that M can be covered by the images of two local parameterizations $\varphi: U \to \mathbb{R}^n$ and $\tilde{\varphi}: \tilde{U} \to \mathbb{R}^n$, with respective imgaes $V \cap M$ and $\tilde{U} \cap M$. Suppose that $V \cap M$ and $\tilde{V} \cap M$ are both connected sets, and that their intersection $V \cap \tilde{V} \cap M$ consists of exactly two disjoint connected sets W_1 and W_2 .

Let

$$H = \tilde{\varphi}^{-1} \circ \varphi = \tilde{\varphi}^{-1}(V \cap \tilde{V} \cap M) \to \varphi^{-1}(V \cap \tilde{V} \cap M)$$

be the transition map. If the nowhere vanishing smooth function $\det(DH) > 0$ on $\varphi^{-1}(W_1)$ and $\det(DH) < 0$ on $\varphi^{-1}(W_2)$, then M is not orientable.

♦ Proposition 61 can be thought of in the following way: if we can find two disjoint connected sets of which det(D H) is positive on one and negative on the other, we know that such a submanifold must not have been orientable.

Proof

As given, we have $M=W_1\cup W_2$, where $W_1\cap W_2=\emptyset$, and W_1,W_2 are both connected. Since φ^{-1} is continuous, it follows that $\varphi^{-1}(W_1)$ and $\varphi^{-1}(W_2)$ are both connected and disjoint 1 . By the **Intermediate Value Theorem**, since $\det(\mathrm{D}\,H)$ is non-zero, and by our assumption that $\det(\mathrm{D}\,H)>0$ on $\varphi^{-1}(W_1)$ and $\det(\mathrm{D}\,H)<0$ on $\varphi^{-1}(W_2)$, it follows that $\det(\mathrm{D}\,H)$ must have a constant sign on each of $\varphi^{-1}(W_1)$ and $\varphi^{-1}(W_2)$.

Suppose M is orientable, i.e. $\exists \mu \in \Omega^k(M)$ such that $\mu \neq 0$. By

¹ This step requires one understand certain results about continuity and connectedness. See notes on PMATH 351.

what's given, let 2

² Why is this legal?

$$\varphi^*\mu = h \, du^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge du^k$$

for some nowhere vanishing smooth function h on U, and

$$\tilde{\varphi}^* \mu = \tilde{h} \, d\tilde{u}^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge d\tilde{u}^k$$

for some nowhere vanishing smooth function \tilde{h} on \tilde{U} . Since $U=\varphi^{-1}(V\cap M)$ and $V\cap M$ is connected and φ^{-1} is continuous, again, by the same reason about connectedness in the last paragraph, U is connected. Similarly, $\tilde{U}=\tilde{\varphi}(\tilde{V}\cap M)$ is connected. Again, by the **Intermediate Value Theorem**, h and \tilde{h} never change sign on their respective domains. However, we have

$$h du^{1} \wedge ... \wedge du^{k} = \varphi^{*} \mu = H^{*} \tilde{\varphi}^{*} \mu$$

$$= H^{*} (\tilde{h} d\tilde{u}^{1} \wedge ... \wedge d\tilde{u}^{k})$$

$$= (\tilde{h} \circ H) (\det(DH)) du^{1} \wedge du^{k},$$

where the last equality is by 📒 Definition 50. Thus, we have

$$h = (\tilde{h} \circ H) \det(DH) \tag{25.1}$$

everywhere on $\varphi^{-1}(V \cap \tilde{V} \cap M) = \varphi^{-1}(W_1 \cup W_2) = \varphi^{-1}(W_1) \cup \varphi^{-1}(W_2)$. Since h and $\tilde{h} \circ H$ ³ do not change sign on $\varphi^{-1}(W_1) \cup \varphi^{-1}(W_2)$, and so Equation (25.1) tells us that $\det(DH)$ does not change sign on $\varphi^{-1}(W_1) \cup \varphi^{-1}(W_2)$, which is a contradiction.

Therefore, *M* must have been non-orientable to start with.

³ How did we know that *H* does not change signs?

П

66 Note 25.1.1

The converse of **\leftrightarrow Proposition 61** is also true, but we do not yet have the machinery to prove this. Note that the converse says:

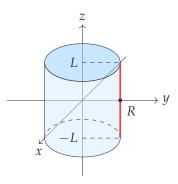
If there exists a cover of M by local parameterizations such that all the transition maps $\phi_{\beta\alpha}$ satisfy $\det(D\,\phi_{\beta\alpha}) > 0$, then M is oriented.

Example 25.1.1 (Non-orientability of the Möbius strip)

The Möbius strip can be obtained by taking a rectangular strip of paper, and gluing two ends of the paper together after a twist. Mathematically, we can construct this as a surface of revolution, in particular by taking a curve in the yz-plane and rotating it about the z-axis.

Consider a straight line segment y = R truncated so that the line segment only extends within -L < z < L, for R > L > 0 4(cf. Figure 25.1).

If we rotate this line segment around the z-axis, we get a cylinder, as shown in Figure 25.2.



However, we suppose that the straight line also rotates counterclockwise about its center at a rate $\frac{1}{2}$ (of 2π), so that when it returns to the starting point, the line segment is now inverted (cf. Figure 25.3).

Note that we require R > L > 0 so that we do not end up with an intersection in the resulting surface.

We can write down a parameterization for this new surface: let φ be the parameterization such that $x = r \cos v$, $y = r \sin v$, and z = z, and we have

$$\varphi: (-L, L) \times (0, 2\pi) \to \mathbb{R}^3$$

$$\varphi(t, v) = \left(\left(R - t \sin \frac{v}{2} \right) \cos v, \left(R - t \sin \frac{v}{2} \right) \sin v, t \cos \frac{v}{2} \right).$$

⁴ We make this assumption so that it is useful when we construct the Möbius strip.

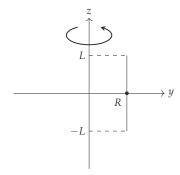


Figure 25.1: Straight line segment y = Rtruncated to within -L < z < L

Figure 25.2: Cylinder as a surface of revolution

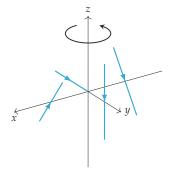


Figure 25.3: Same setup as in Figure 25.1 but with a counterclockwise rotation at its center. The arrows on the line segment is a dummy orientation indicating where is up and down.

The resulting surface of φ is as shown in Figure 25.4.

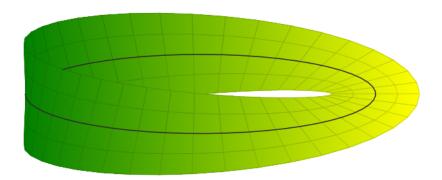


Figure 25.4: Möbius strip coming from φ .

It is easy to see that we can adjust the values of the second space in the domain for other parameterizations of the Möbius strip. In particular, we can have $\tilde{\varphi}$ defined as

$$\tilde{\varphi}: (-L, L) \times (-\pi, \pi) \to \mathbb{R}^3$$

$$\tilde{\varphi}(\tilde{t}, \tilde{v}) = \left(\left(R - \tilde{t} \sin \frac{\tilde{v}}{2} \right) \cos \tilde{v}, \left(R - \tilde{t} \sin \frac{\tilde{v}}{2} \right) \sin \tilde{v}, \tilde{t} \cos \frac{\tilde{v}}{2} \right).$$

The resulting surface of $\tilde{\varphi}$ is shown in Figure 25.5.

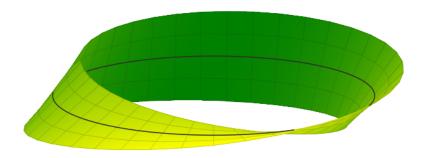


Figure 25.5: Möbius strip coming from $\tilde{\varphi}$.

Claim: the Möbius strip is not orientable Notice that the domains of φ and $\tilde{\varphi}$, which are

$$U = (-L, L) \times (0, 2\pi)$$
 and $\tilde{U} = (-L, L) \times (-\pi, \pi)$,

are both connected. Since φ and $\tilde{\varphi}$ are both homeomorphisms, in particular continuous, both $\varphi(U)$ and $\tilde{\varphi}(\tilde{U})$ are both connected. The intersection of these two parameterizations, which we give as $W_1 \cup$

 W_2 , are

$$W_1 = \varphi((-L, L) \times (0, \pi)) = \tilde{\varphi}((-L, L) \times (0, \pi))$$

$$W_2 = \varphi((-L, L) \times (\pi, 2\pi)) = \tilde{\varphi}((-L, L) \times (-\pi, 0))$$

Note that W_1 and W_2 are connected and disjoint. Consider

$$H = \tilde{\varphi}^{-1} \circ \varphi$$
,

that takes (t, v) to (\tilde{t}, \tilde{v}) .

Now in W_1 , we have that $\tilde{v} = v$ and $\tilde{t} = t$. It follows that

$$(DH) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

and so det(DH) = 1 on W_1 .

However, on W_2 , we have that $\tilde{v} = v - 2\pi$. Then $\frac{\tilde{v}}{2 - \frac{v}{2}} - \pi$. So we have

$$\sin \frac{\tilde{v}}{2} = \sin \frac{v}{2}$$
 and $\cos \frac{\tilde{v}}{2} = -\cos \frac{v}{2}$.

We must therefore have that $\tilde{t} = -t$. This is expected from our counterclockwise rotation around the anchored point as we revolve around the z-axis, and eventually turning the line segment upside down. We thus have

$$(DH) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix},$$

and so det(DH) = -1 on W_2 .

It follows from • Proposition 61 that the Möbius strip is nonorientable.

Part IV

Stokes' Theorem and deRham Cohomology

Partitions of Unity

A partition of unity is a tool that allows us to decompose geometric objects into smaller pieces, each of which can be treated with methods of standard multivariable calculus.

66 Note 26.1.1

My understanding is that it is a tool to assign a fair weight to each of these smaller pieces. Thinking ahead, we want to be able to define integration over manifolds, and we know that a manifold can have infinitely many parameterizations that cover it. If we simply take a sum of all the integration over each of the parameterizations, we will end up "double counting" the contribution of many of the points to the integral, which would render the tool inaccurate.

To amend this problem, first, we want to be able to cover over each point of M using parameterizations as "tiny" as possibly can. This still makes it difficult for us: there may just be too many parameterizations for us to calculate, and even more so when M is a 'big' manifold. Thus, we will require that M is compact. This will now give us a finite number of parameterzations to work with.

This makes taking care of double counting in the smaller areas become easier to deal with. In particular, we will define smooth bump functions which will be our way of giving a weight to each point on the small area, and the closer we get to the centre, the greater a value we assign. Since each of the parameterzations are tiny, this gives us a rather fair assignment of weights.

We can do better with this refinement. We can also assign a weight to each of these parameterzations depending on its contribution, which effectively gives us a way to average out parameterzations across the board.

The above ideas will be reflected mathematically in the rest of this lecture, and especially so when we finally define a partition of unity.

To DEFINE a partition of unity, we need to first construct **smooth bump functions**.

\$ Lemma 62 (Smooth Bump Functions)

There exists a smooth function $\chi: \mathbb{R}^k \to \mathbb{R}$ such that ¹

$$\chi(u) = 1$$
 $||u|| \le 1$
 $\chi(u) \in (0,1)$ $1 < ||u|| < 2$
 $\chi(u) = 0$ $||u|| \ge 2$.

Proof

On A₄Q₇, we showed that there exists a smooth function $f: \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ such that f(t) = 0 for all $t \le 0$ and f(t) > 0 for all t > 0. Using such an f, we define $h: \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ such that

$$h(t)\frac{f(2-t)}{f(2-t)+f(t-1)}.$$

Notice that

$$t \le 1 \implies 2-t \ge 1 \implies f(2-t) > 0 \text{ and } f(t-1) = 0$$

 $t > 1 \implies t-1 > 0 \implies f(t-1) > 0 \text{ and } f(2-t) \ge 0.$

We see the the denominator of h is strictly positive for all $t \in \mathbb{R}$. So $h : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ is well-defined. Also, h is smooth, since it is composed of smooth functions.

66 Note 26.1.2

There is no deep meaning behind the choice of 1 and 2 as thresholds. They are simply numbers representing some threshold, and we may as well relabel them as ε and δ respectively. Choosing 1 and 2 is just for conveience.

 $^{\scriptscriptstyle 1}$ We can adjust the thresholds 1 and 2 so that we still have χ as in the lemma.

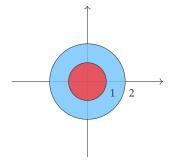


Figure 26.1: Heat map of the smooth bump function $\chi: \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}$

Now, when $t \ge 2$, we have $2 - t \le 0$, and so f(2 - t) = 0. We have that

$$h(t) = 0$$
 when $t \ge 2$.

When 1 < t < 2, by our above observation, we have

$$h(t) \in (0,1)$$
 for $1 < t < 2$.

When $t \le 1$, we have $t - 1 \le 0$, and f(t - 1) = 0. Thus

$$h(t) = 1$$
 for $t \le 1$.

Our desired result follows by taking $\chi(u) = h(||u||)$.

We also need a special class of local parameterizations, given in the following lemma.

♣ Lemma 63 (Special Parameterizations to Construct Partitions of Unity)

Let M be a k-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n and let $\varphi: U \to \mathbb{R}^n$ be any local parameterization of M, with image $V \cap M$. Let $p \in V \cap M$. Then we can find a local parameterization $\psi: B_3(0) \to \mathbb{R}^n$ of M, where

$$B_3(0) = \left\{ u \in \mathbb{R}^k \mid ||u|| < 3 \right\},\,$$

such that $\psi(0) = p$ and $\psi(B_3(0)) \subseteq \varphi(U) = V \cap M$.

Proof

Let $u_0 \in U$ be the unique preimage of $p \in V \cap M$, i.e. $\varphi(u_0) = p$. Since U is open, $\exists \delta > 0$ such that $B_{\delta}(u_0) \subseteq U$.

Let $L: \mathbb{R}^k \to \mathbb{R}^k$ be a translation map that 'makes' u_0 the new origin, i.e. $L(u) = u - u_0$. Let U' be L(U). We have that

- L is a homeomorphism between U and U'; and
- it is clear that $L(B_{\delta}(u_0)) = B_{\delta}(0)$.

66 Note 26.1.3

Again, there is no deep meaning behind choosing 3 as the radius of the ball. It simply is out of convenience, and we may as well relabel it as, say, γ .

✓ Strategy

The idea of the proof is simple: we know that p has a pre-image, but that may not be 0 and U may not be big enough to contain $B_3(0)$. So we just need to translate U and then scale it accordingly.

In particular, $\varphi \circ L^{-1}$ is another parameterization of M.

Now let $F:\mathbb{R}^k\to\mathbb{R}^k$ be the map $F(u)=\frac{3}{\delta}(u)$, and write F(U')=U''. Then

- F is a homeomorphism between U' and U''; and
- again, $F(B_{\delta}(0)) = B_3(0)$.

We also have that $\varphi \circ L^{-1} \circ F^{-1}$ is another parameterization of M.

In particular, we have that

$$\psi = \varphi \circ L^{-1} \circ F^{-1}$$

is a homeomorphism, and in particular, $\psi(B_3(0)) \subseteq \varphi(U) = V \cap M$. Also, we have that $\psi(0) = \varphi(u_0) = p$.

Remark 26.1.1

The proof of Lemma 63 shows that we can always find a local parameterization φ of M such that $\varphi(0) = p$, and we can find an open ball of any radius around the origin such that we contain p in a small open set. In effect, we are can construct an open ball around p of any radius induced by a parameterization.

We also require the following definition in order to define a partition of unity.

■ Definition 78 (Support of a Function)

Let $f: V \to \mathbb{R}$. The support of f is defined as

$$\operatorname{supp} f := \overline{\{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : f(x) \neq 0\}},$$

where the bar denotes closure.

By the above definition, we know that $\mathbb{R}^n \setminus \text{supp } f$ is an open subset of \mathbb{R}^n where f is identically zero.

We are now ready to plough through constructing a partition of unity.

Theorem 64 (Partition of Unity)

Let M be a compact k-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n , and let $\{V_{\alpha} \cap$ $M: \alpha \in A$ be a cover of M by the images of local parameterizations $\varphi_{\alpha}:U_{\alpha}\to\mathbb{R}^n$. Then there exists a finite collection of smooth functions $\rho_j: M \to \mathbb{R}$ for $j = 1, \ldots, m$ such that

- 1. for each j, the smooth function ρ_i satisfies $0 \leq \rho_i(p) \leq 1$ for all $p \in M$;
- 2. for each j, supp $\rho_j \subseteq V_{\alpha(j)} \cap M$ for some $\alpha(j) \in A$; and
- 3. $\sum_{i=1}^{m} \rho_i(p) = 1$ for all $p \in M$.

Such a collection of smooth functions is called a partition of unity subordinate to this cover.

Proof

By Lemma 63, for each $p \in M$, we can find $\psi_p : B_3(0) \to W_p \cap M$ such that

- $\psi_{v}(0) = p$;
- $\psi_v(B_1(0)) = W_v \subseteq V_\alpha \cap M$ for some $\alpha \in A$. ²

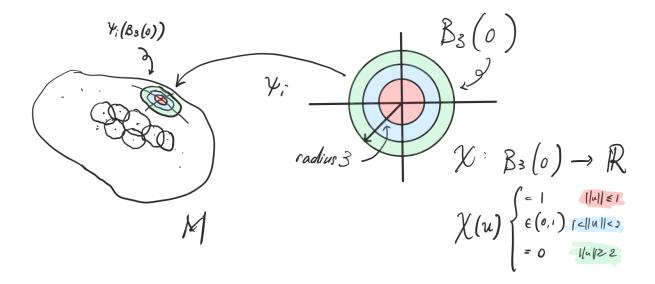
Then $\{W_p : p \in M\}$ forms an open cover of M. Since M is compact, there exists $\{W_{p,i}\}_{i=1}^n \subseteq \{W_p : p \in M\}$ that covers M. ³

Define $\zeta_i: M \to \mathbb{R}$ given by

$$\zeta_i = \begin{cases} \chi(\psi_i^{-1}(q)) & q \in \psi_i(B_3(0)) \\ 0 & q \in M \setminus \psi_i(\overline{B_2(0)}) \end{cases},$$

It might be helpful to read Note 26.1.1 before ploughing ahead.

- 2 Notice that we defined W_{p} as the image of $\psi_p(B_1(0))$ instead of $\psi_p(B_3(0))$. This is a sneaky step that we can do to allow ourselves to choose the smallest open ball so that it will be useful for us later.
- ³ With this, we have completed the setup, putting a finite cover of small open balls on M.



where χ is a smooth bump function. ⁴

Notice that each of the ζ_i 's is smooth since $\chi \circ \psi^{-1}$ is smooth for each $p \in \psi_i(B_3(0))$. Since supp $\chi \subseteq \overline{B_2(0)}$, ζ_i is identically zero on $M \setminus \psi(\overline{B_2(0)})$. This implies that ζ_i is indeed smooth on M. ⁵

Now define $\rho_i : M \to \mathbb{R}$ such that

$$\rho_i(p) = \frac{\zeta_i(p)}{\sum_{j=1}^n \zeta_j(p)},$$

for any $p \in M$. Note that that the **denominator** of each ρ_i is greater than 0, since $p \in W_{q,j} = \psi_j(B_1(0))$ for some j, since the $W_{q,j}$'s form a cover of M. ⁶

We shall now verify the conditions:

1. It is clear that $0 \le \rho_i(p) \le 1$, since we clearly have

$$0 \le \zeta_i(p) \le \sum_{j=1}^n \zeta_i(p);$$

2. Notice that

$$\rho_i(p) = 0 \iff \zeta_i(p) = 0 \iff p \in M \setminus \overline{B_2(0)} \iff p \notin W_{q,i}$$

Thus supp $\rho_i \subseteq W_{q,i} \cap M \subseteq V_{\alpha(i)} \cap M$ for some $\alpha(i) \in A$; and

Figure 26.2: Constructing a partition of unity

- ⁴ With this, we have assigned a weightage to each point on the manifold given a parameterization.
- 5 It is important to us that all the ζ_i 's are continuous, since we want to assign a weight to each parameterization in a smooth' manner. Its importance will surface later on.

⁶ This is where we use the **sneaky** step. Notice that should we not have picked the W_p 's in such a way the definition of the ρ_i 's would be in deep trouble.

3. it is clear that

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} \rho_i(p) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{\zeta_i(p)}{\sum_{j=1}^{n} \zeta_j(p)} = 1.$$

Finally, we note that since ρ_i is a composition of smooth functions, ρ_i itself is also smooth, which is what we need.

Remark 26.1.2

By Karigiannis (2019), the compactness assumption is actually not necessary; we can construct partitions of unity even on noncompact submanifolds on \mathbb{R}^n , but the process is considerably more difficult.



27.1 Partitions of Unity (Continued)

♦ Proposition 65 (Compatible Local Parameterizations Implies Orientability)

Let M be a k-dimemensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n and suppose that there exists a cover of M by local parameterizations such that all the transition maps $\phi_{\beta\alpha}$ satisfy $\det(D\,\phi_{\beta\alpha})>0$. Then M is oriented. That is, there exists a nowhere vanishing k-form μ on M, such that all these local parameterizations are compatible with μ .

66 Note 27.1.1

The above result is true in general when used with a general partition of unity. We shall, however, only prove for when M is compact.

Proof

Let $V_{\alpha(1)}, \ldots, V_{\alpha(m)}$ be the finite open cover of M from Theorem 64, so that supp $\rho_j \subseteq V_{\alpha(j)} \cap M$. Let ν_j be an orientation on $V_{\alpha(j)} \cap M$ induced by the parameterization $\varphi_{\alpha(j)}$, so that we have

$$\varphi_{\alpha(i)}^* \nu_i = du^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge du^k$$
.

✓ Strategy

We need to construct an a smooth k-form μ on M, and show that it is non-zero. We do so by construction.

We now define a k-form μ on M by

$$\mu = \sum_{j=1}^{m} \rho_j \nu_j.$$

It remains to show that μ is indeed an orientation, i.e. it is a non-vanishing smooth k-form on M.

¹By our proof in Pheorem 64, $\exists j_0$ such that $\rho_{j_0}(p) > 0$. Let ν_{j_0} be the orientation on $V_{\alpha(j_0)} \cap M$ associated to $\varphi_{\alpha(j_0)}$. Let $\{(e_1)_p, \ldots, (e_k)_p\}$ be an oriented basis for T_pM with respect to ν_{j_0} , i.e.

$$(\nu_{j_0})((e_1)_p,\ldots,(e_k)_p)>0.$$

Let $u=\varphi_{\alpha(j_0)}^{-1}(p)$ and $(e_i)_p=(d\varphi_{\alpha(j_0)})_u(w_i)_u$ for some $(w_i)_u\in T_u\mathbb{R}^k$.

Let us observe that

$$(\nu_{j_0})_p((e_1)_p,\ldots,(e_k)_p) = (\nu_{j_0})_p((d\varphi_{\alpha(j_0)})_u(w_1)_u,\ldots,(d\varphi_{\alpha(j_0)})_u(w_k)_u)$$

$$= ((d\varphi_{\alpha(j_0)})_u^*\nu_{j_0})((w_1)_u,\ldots,(w_k)_u)$$

$$=$$

Proof left as to-be-finished, cause I just noticed what the next step was and realized that that really came out of nowhere.

- ¹ There is quite some work to do here.
- We need to ensure that all of the parameterizations remain compatible with μ.
- We want $\mu_p \neq 0$ for any $p \in M$.

As things look like now, one may wonder if the $\rho_j \nu_j$'s may cancel each other out. It turns out that, indirectly so by Theorem 64, around any point, the relevant k-forms all turn out to be positive.

27.2 Integration of Forms

Let us first define integration for a more 'atomic' case.

■ Definition 79 (Integration of Forms on Euclidean Space)

Let $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k$ be an open set, and $\eta \in \Omega^k(U)$, i.e.

$$\eta = h du^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge du^k$$

for some $h \in C^{\infty}(U)$. Note that supp $\eta = \text{supp } h$, since $du^1 \wedge ... \wedge du^k \neq 0$.

Suppose supp η is a compact subset of \mathbb{R}^k . The integral of η over U,

² it is not interesting otherwise.

denoted $\int_{IJ} \eta$, is defined as

$$\int_{U} \eta := \int_{U} h \, du^{1} \wedge \ldots \wedge du^{k} = \int_{U} h \, du^{1} \ldots du^{k},$$

where the final integral is the usual integral of a compactly-supported $h \in C^{\infty}(U)$ over an open set $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k$.

Next, we define an integral over a manifold that has a single parameterization.

66 Note 27.2.1

If we define integration on manifolds using exactly **[Definition 79** by simply bringing what we have to do on the manifold onto the parameterization, we quickly run into the following problem: we may reparameterize M simply by switching one of the basis to its negative, i.e. taking

$$\{v^1 = -u^1, v^2 = u^2, \dots, v^k = u^k\},\$$

then we would have

$$\int_{U} \varphi^* \eta = \int_{U} h \, dv^1 \, dv^2 \dots dv^k = -\int_{U} h \, du^1 \, du^2 \dots du^k = -\int_{U} \varphi^* \eta,$$

where η is a k-form on M, φ is the single parameterization. Then this definition of an integration would not be well-defined. This is where the orientation of the manifold comes in. With an orientation on M, we will now have to choose parameterizations that are compatible with the orientation. This also takes care of weird reparameterizations (cf.

• Proposition 61).

Definition 80 (Integral over Manifolds with a Single Parameterization)

Let M be a k-dimensional submanifold such that $M = \varphi(U)$ is the image of a single local parameterization $\varphi: U \to \mathbb{R}^n$. Let μ be the orientation of *M* as determined by φ , i.e.

$$\varphi^*\mu=du^1\wedge\ldots\wedge du^k.$$

Let $\omega \in \Omega^k(M)$. Then $\varphi^* \omega$ is a smooth k-form on U, and suppose that $\operatorname{supp} \omega$ is a compact subset of M. ³ We define the **integral** of ω over $M = \varphi(U)$ as

$$\int_{\varphi(U)} \omega = \int_{U} \varphi^* \omega,$$

where the RHS uses the <a> Definition 79.

 3 Since φ is a homeomorphism, it follows that supp $\omega = \varphi(\operatorname{supp} \varphi^{*}\omega)$, and so ω is compact if and only if supp h, where $\varphi^{*}\omega = h\,du^{1}\wedge\ldots\wedge du^{k}$, is a compact subset of \mathbb{R}^{k} .

Corollary 66 (Well-Definedness of the Integral over Manifolds with a Single Parameterization)

Let M be a k-dimensional submanifold such that $M=\varphi(U)$, where $\varphi:U\to\mathbb{R}^n$ is the single local parameterization of M. Let $\omega\in\Omega^k(M)$. Then $\int_M\omega$ is well-defined, i.e. it is independent of reparameterizations of M, if we restrict to reparameterizations which all induce the same orientation on M.



This is just Note 27.2.1.

28.1 Integration of Forms (Continued)

From last time, let $M=\varphi(U)=\tilde{\varphi}(\tilde{U})$ be a parameterized k-dimensional submanfold.

Let $w \in \Omega^k(M)$. We defined

$$\int_{M} w = \int_{U} \varphi^* w = \int_{\tilde{U}} \tilde{\varphi}^* w.$$

We showed that this is well-defined iff φ , $\tilde{\varphi}$ determine the same orientation, i.e. $\det(D(\tilde{\varphi}^{-1}\circ\varphi))>0$.

Now Let M be a compact k-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n . Let $w \in \Omega^k(M)$, where supp(w) is a closed subset of M, which is compact, and so supp(w) is compact. We want to define

$$\int_{M} w \in \mathbb{R}.$$

The idea is to use partitions of unity to decompose ω into a finite sum of smooth k-forms, with each of them compactly supported in the image of the single parameterization.

Given a partition of unity $\{\rho_i\}$, observe that

$$\omega = 1 \cdot \omega = \left(\sum_{j=1}^{m} \rho_j\right) \omega = \sum_{j=1}^{m} (\rho_j \omega),$$

and

$$\operatorname{supp}(\rho_j\omega)\subseteq\operatorname{supp}(\rho_j)\subseteq V_j\cap M.$$

Hence, we can consider $\rho_i \omega$ as a smooth k-form on V_i and define ¹

¹ This is sensible because $\rho_j \omega$ vanishes outside of $V_j \cap M$.

$$\int_{M} \rho_{j} \omega := \int_{V_{j} \cap M} \rho_{j} \omega = \int_{U_{j}} \varphi_{j}^{*}(\rho_{j} \omega).$$

■ Definition 81 (Integral over Manifolds)

Let $\{V_{\alpha} \cap M : \alpha \in A\}$ be a cover of a compact manifold M given by images of local parameterizations $\varphi_{\alpha} : U_{\alpha} \to \mathbb{R}^n$ of M, all of which are compatible with the given orientation on M. Let $\{\rho_j : j = 1, \ldots, m\}$ be a partition of unity subordinate to the above cover. Let us denote $V_{\alpha(j)} = V_j$, and $\varphi_{\alpha(j)} = \varphi_j$. Note that

$$\bigcup_{j=1}^m V_j \supseteq M.$$

We define an integration over forms on manifolds as

$$\int_{M} \omega = \int_{M} \left(\sum_{j=1}^{m} \rho_{j} \omega \right) := \sum_{j=1}^{m} \int_{M} \rho_{j} \omega = \int_{V_{j} \cap M} \rho_{j} \omega = \int_{U_{j}} \varphi_{j}^{*}(\rho_{j} \omega).$$

Now we need to show that the result is independent of the choice of the parameterization and partition of unity.

♦ Proposition 67 (Independence of the Integral from the Choice of Parameterization and Partition of Unity)

Given a different set of parameterization $\{\hat{\varphi}_{\alpha}\}$ that covers M, and a different partition of unity $\{\hat{\rho}_r\}$ subordinate to this cover, we have that

$$\sum_{i=1}^{m} \int_{M} \rho_{i} \omega = \sum_{i=1}^{r} \int_{M} \hat{\rho}_{r} \omega.$$

Proof

Let $\{W_{\beta} \cap M : \beta \in B\}$ be a cover of M by images of local parameterizations ψ_{β} of M compatible with the given orientation. Let $\{\sigma_i : i = 1, ..., l\}$ be a partition of unity for this cover, with the

usual properties.

By our first choice, we have

$$\int_{M} \omega = \sum_{j=1}^{m} \int_{M} \rho_{j} \omega = \sum_{j=1}^{m} \int_{M} \left(\sum_{i=1}^{l} \sigma_{i} \right) \rho_{j} \omega$$

$$= \sum_{j=1}^{m} \sum_{i=1}^{l} \int_{M} \sigma_{i} \rho_{j} \omega = \sum_{i=1}^{l} \sum_{j=1}^{m} \int_{M} \rho_{j} \sigma_{i} \omega$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{l} \int_{M} \left(\sum_{j=1}^{m} \rho_{j} \right) \sigma_{i} \omega = \sum_{i=1}^{l} \int_{M} \sigma_{i} \omega = \int_{M} \omega,$$

where the final equality is by our second choice.

We shall now provide a basic version of Stokes' Theorem.

Theorem 68 (Stokes' Theorem (First Version))

Suppose M is a compact and oriented k-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n , and $\omega \in \Omega^{k-1}(M)$ and $d\omega \in \Omega^k(M)$, then

$$\int_{M} d\omega = 0.$$

We will prove a result more general than the above.

More generally, if *M* is a *k*-dimensional, compact, and oriented submanifold, with boundary, then ∂M (the boundary) is a compact, oriented (k-1)-dimensional submanifold, such that

$$\int_{M} \partial M = \int_{\partial M} \omega.$$

Submanifolds with Boundary

■ Definition 82 (Half Space)

We define the **half space** of \mathbb{R}^n as

$$\mathbb{H}^n := \left\{ x \in \mathbb{R}^n : x^1 \le 0 \right\}.$$

Note that

 $\operatorname{supp}(\rho_i \omega) \subseteq V_i \cap M,$

and

 $\operatorname{supp}(\sigma_i \rho_i \omega) \subseteq W_i \cap V_i \cap M.$

66 Note 28.2.1

The half space is closed but unbounded.

■ Definition 83 (Boundary of the Half Space)

We define the boundary of the half space as

$$\partial \mathbb{H}^n := \left\{ x \in \mathbb{R}^n : x^1 = 0 \right\} \simeq \mathbb{R}^{n-1}.$$

■ Definition 84 (Open Subset in a Half Space)

A subset A of \mathbb{H}^n is said to be open in \mathbb{H}^n if $A = U \cap \mathbb{H}^n$ where $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ is open.

66 Note 28.2.2

A subset A which is open in \mathbb{H}^n may or may not be open in \mathbb{R}^n .

Lemma 69 (Characterization of Open Sets in a Half Space)

Let $A, B \subseteq \mathbb{H}^n$. If $A \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$, then A is open in \mathbb{H}^n . Suppose $B \cap \partial \mathbb{H}^n = \emptyset$. If B is open in \mathbb{H}^n , then B is open in \mathbb{R}^n .

Proof

We have that A is open in \mathbb{R}^n and contained in \mathbb{H}^n . Then we simply need to take $U = A \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$. Thus A is open in \mathbb{H}^n .

Suppose $B \cap \partial \mathbb{H}^n = \emptyset$. Let B be open in \mathbb{H}^n . Then $\exists U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ open such that $B = U \cap \mathbb{H}^n$. Let $W = \mathbb{H}^n \setminus \partial \mathbb{H}^n = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : x^1 < 0\}$,

which is open in \mathbb{R}^n . It follows that $B \subseteq W$ and so $B = U \cap W$, which is an intersection of open sets in \mathbb{R}^n . Thus *B* is open in \mathbb{R}^n . \square

■ Definition 85 (Interior point in the Half Space)

Let $A \subseteq \mathbb{H}^n$ be open in \mathbb{H}^n . Then $p \in A$ is called a interior point of A if $p \notin \partial \mathbb{H}^{n-2}$.

 2 We have that $\exists \varepsilon > 0$ such that $B(p,\varepsilon)\subseteq A$.

E Definition 86 (Boundary point in the Half Space)

Let $A \subseteq \mathbb{H}^n$ be open in \mathbb{H}^n . Then $p \in A$ is called an **boundary point** of A if $p \in \partial \mathbb{H}^n$ 3.

 3 In this case, we have that $\forall \varepsilon > 0$ such that $B(p, \varepsilon) \subseteq A$.

Definition 87 (Smooth functions in the Half Space)

Let $A \subseteq \mathbb{H}^n$ be open in \mathbb{H}^n , $f: A \to \mathbb{H}^n$ and $p \in A$. We say that f is **smooth** at p if \exists an open neighbourhood $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ of p and a map $\tilde{f}: U \to \mathbb{R}^n$ such that

- 1. $f \mid_{U \cap A} = \tilde{f} \mid_{U \cap A}$ and
- 2. \tilde{f} is smooth at p.

Remark 28.2.1

1. If p is an interior point of A, then this agrees with the usual definition of smoothness because we can just talk about $U = B(p, \varepsilon) \subseteq A$, and $\tilde{f} = f \mid_{U}$. So if f is smooth at p, we define

$$(\mathrm{D}f)_p := (\mathrm{D}\tilde{f})_p.$$

Claim $(Df)_p$ is well-defined, i.e. independent of the choice of \tilde{f} .

■ Definition 88 (Submanifold with Boundary)

Let $M \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$. We say that M is a k-dimensional submanifold with boundary of \mathbb{R}^n if there exists a cover of M by subsets $\{V_\alpha : \alpha \in A\}$ and a collection of subsets $\{U_\alpha : \alpha \in A\} \subseteq \mathcal{P}(\mathbb{H}^k)$, each U_α open in \mathbb{H}^k , and maps $\varphi_\alpha : U_\alpha \to \mathbb{R}^n$, such that each

- 1. φ_{α} is a homeomorphism of U_{α} onto $\varphi_{\alpha}(U_{\alpha})=V_{\alpha}\cap M$, and
- 2. φ_{α} is a smooth immersion.

29.1 Submanifold with Boundary (Continued)

We defined, in the last lecture, what a submanifold with boundary is. We saw that a k-dimensional submanifold with boundary is a collection of overlapping pieces, each homeomorphic to an open set in \mathbb{H}^k .

Suppose $\varphi_{\alpha}(A_{\alpha}) \cap \varphi_{b}(A_{\beta}) \neq \emptyset$. We define the transition map

$$\varphi_{\beta\alpha}:\varphi_{\alpha}^{-1}(\varphi_{\alpha}(A_{\alpha})\cap\varphi_{\beta}(A_{\beta}))\to\varphi_{\beta}^{-1}(\varphi_{\alpha}(A_{\alpha})\cap\varphi_{\beta}(A_{\beta}))$$

by

$$\varphi_{\beta\alpha} = \varphi_{\beta}^{-1} \circ \varphi_{\alpha}.$$

This is the same definition as <a> Definition 59, but this time, our open sets come from \mathbb{H}^k .

We still have \(\bigcirc \text{Proposition 42, i.e. transition maps are diffeomorphisms, and the same proof can be applied.

Remark 29.1.1

Using the local parameterizations φ_{α} for a submanifold with boundary M, and the fact that transition maps are diffeomorphisms, we can now define

- smooth functions on M,
- smooth curves on M,
- smooth vector fields on M,
- smooth differential forms (r-forms) on M for $0 \le r \le k$,

- orientations and orientability,
- partitions of unity, and
- integration of smooth k-forms if M is oriented and compact,

all exactly as before. The only difference is that we replace open set in \mathbb{R}^k by open sets in \mathbb{H}^k .

Remark 29.1.2

If all the A_{α} 's are actually open in \mathbb{R}^k , then M is a k-dimensional submanifold in the previous sense.

So WE DEFINED what a submanifold with boundary is, but what is a boundary?

■ Definition 89 (Boundary Point on a Submanifold)

Let M be a k-dimensional submanifol with boundary. A point $p \in M$ is called a **boundary point** of M if there exists a local parameterization $\varphi_{\alpha}: A_{\alpha} \to M$ with $p \in \varphi_{\alpha}(A_{\alpha})$ such that $\varphi_{\alpha}^{-1}(p) \in \partial \mathbb{H}^{k}$.

Of course, we can ask ourselves if the above definition is well-defined. That is, can there but a φ_{β} such that $\varphi_{\beta}^{-1}(p)$ is not on ∂A_{β} ?

♦ Proposition 70 (Well-definedness of the Boundary of a Manifold)

Let $p \in M$ be a boundary point. Then $\varphi_{\beta}^{-1}(p) \in \partial \mathbb{H}^k$ for all local parameterizations $\varphi_{\beta} : A_{\beta} \to \mathbb{R}^n$ of M.

Proof

Suppose not. Let $u_{\alpha} = \varphi_{\alpha}^{-1}(p) \in \partial \mathbb{H}^k$ so that u_{α} is a boundary point of A_{α} , and suppose there exists φ_{β} a parameterization such that $u_{\beta} = \varphi_{\beta}^{-1}(p) \notin \partial \mathbb{H}^k$, i.e. u_{β} is an interior point of A_{β} .

Now the transition map

$$\varphi_{\alpha\beta} = \varphi_{\alpha}^{-1} \circ \varphi_{\beta}$$

is a diffeomorphism between the opens subsets of \mathbb{H}^k that takes u_β to $\varphi_{\alpha\beta}(u_{\beta}) = u_{\alpha}$. Since u_{β} is an interior point of A_{β} , there exists an open set $W \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k$ such that $u_\beta \in W$ in the domain of $\varphi_{\alpha\beta}$. Then $W \cap \partial \mathbb{H}^k = \emptyset$.

Restrict the diffeomorphism $\varphi_{\alpha\beta}$ to W, and so $(D \varphi_{\alpha\beta})_{u_{\beta}}$ is invertble. By the inverse function theorem, $\exists \tilde{W} \subseteq W$ open in \mathbb{R}^k , with $u_{\alpha} \in \tilde{W}$ such that $\varphi_{\alpha\beta}$ maps \tilde{W} diffeomorphically onto $\varphi_{\alpha\beta}(W)$, which is an open set in \mathbb{R}^k . Thus

$$u_{\alpha} = \varphi_{\alpha\beta}(u_{\beta}) \in \varphi_{\alpha\beta}(W) \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k$$
 open.

So $\exists Y \subseteq \mathbb{R}^k$ open, with $u_\beta \in Y \subseteq \varphi_{\alpha\beta}(\tilde{W}) \subseteq \varphi_{\alpha\beta}(W) \subseteq A_\alpha$. Thus there exists points in A_{α} with $u^1 > 0$, which is impossible since we are in \mathbb{H}^k .

Definition 90 (Boundary of a Submanifold)

Let M be a k-dimensional submanifold with boundary. The boundary of M is denoted ∂M and is the subset of M consisting of all boundary points of M.

66 Note 29.1.1

A submanifold M with boundary is an ordinary submanifold (i.e. sub*manifold without boundary) iff* $\partial M = \emptyset$.

♦ Proposition 71 (Dimension of the Boundary of a Submanifold)

Let M be a k-dimensional submanifold with boundary. Suppose $\partial M \neq 0$ \emptyset . Then ∂M is a (k-1)-dimensional submanifold with boundary, i.e.

$$\partial(\partial M) = \emptyset.$$

Proof

We need to find a cover of ∂M by local parameterizations whose domains are open sets in \mathbb{R}^{k-1} .

Let $p \in \partial M \subseteq M$, so that there exists a local parameterization φ of M such that $\varphi : A \to \mathbb{R}^n$, where A is open in \mathbb{H}^k , with $p \in \varphi(A)$. Let $\hat{\varphi}$ be the restriction of φ to $A \cap (\partial \mathbb{H}^k)$.

Let $\hat{A} = A \cap (\partial \mathbb{H}^k)$. Check \hat{A} is open in $\partial \mathbb{H}^k \simeq \mathbb{R}^{k-1}$. Let

$$\hat{\varphi}(p) = (0, u^2, \dots, u^k) \in (\partial \mathbb{H}^k) \cap A,$$

and

$$\hat{u}=(u^2,\ldots,u^k)\in\hat{A}.$$

Then

$$\hat{\varphi}(\hat{u}) = p \in \partial M$$
.

We need to show that $\hat{\varphi}: \hat{A} \to \mathbb{R}^n$, where \hat{A} is open in \mathbb{R}^{k-1} , is a smooth immersion and a homeomorphism onto its image.

Since φ is smooth at $v\in A\cap\partial\mathbb{H}^k$, we have that $\hat{\varphi}$ is smooth at $\hat{v}\in\hat{A}$. The Jacobian

$$(\mathbf{D}\,\hat{\boldsymbol{\varphi}})_{\hat{\boldsymbol{u}}} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial \boldsymbol{\varphi}^1}{\partial u^2} \Big|_{\hat{\boldsymbol{u}}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial \boldsymbol{\varphi}^1}{\partial u^k} \Big|_{\hat{\boldsymbol{u}}} \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial \boldsymbol{\varphi}^n}{\partial u^2} \Big|_{\hat{\boldsymbol{u}}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial \boldsymbol{\varphi}^n}{\partial u^k} \Big|_{\hat{\boldsymbol{u}}} \end{pmatrix}.$$

 φ is an immersion, so columns of $(D\varphi)_{\hat{u}}$ are linearly independent, so columns are $(D\hat{\varphi})_{\hat{u}}$ are still linearly independent, hence $\hat{\varphi}$ is an immersion.

So $\hat{\varphi}$ is continuous because it is the restriction of a continuous map. Thus

$$(\hat{\varphi})^{-1}:\hat{\varphi}(\hat{A})\to\hat{A}$$

is the restriction of φ^{-1} to $\varphi(\hat{A})$, and so it is also continuous. Thus $\hat{\varphi}$ is a homeomorphism onto its image. Thus $\hat{\varphi}$ is a local parameter-

ization for ∂M .

30.1 Stokes' Theorem (Continued)

Proof (Stokes' Theorem (Continued))

We reduced the proof to showing that following: given A open in \mathbb{H}^k and $\hat{A} = A \cap (\partial \mathbb{H}^k)$ open in \mathbb{R}^{k-1} . Let $\varphi : A \to \mathbb{R}^n$ and $\hat{\varphi} = \varphi \upharpoonright_{\hat{A}} \hat{A} \to \mathbb{R}^n$ be a parameterizations. Let $\eta \in \Omega^{k-1}(\varphi(A))$, where $\operatorname{supp}(\eta)$ is compact. We want to be able to show that

$$\int_{A_j} d(\varphi_j^*(\rho_j \omega)) = \int_{\hat{A}_j} \hat{\varphi}_j^*(\rho_j \omega)$$

for all j.

First, some observations are needed. Let us write

$$\Omega^k(A) \ni \varphi^* \eta = \sum_{i=1}^k (-1)^{i-1} h_i \, du^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge \hat{du^i} \wedge \ldots \wedge du^k, \quad (30.1)$$

where the $(-1)^{i-1}$ instead of $(-1)^{k-1}$ for convenience, and $h_i \in C^{\infty}(A)$ has compact support. Now note that $\hat{\varphi} = \varphi \circ j$, where $j: \mathbb{R}^{k-1} \to \mathbb{R}^k$ is the smooth map

$$j(u^2,...,u^k) = (-0,u^2,...,u^k).$$

Thus we have that $\hat{\varphi}^* = j^* \varphi^*$. In particular, $j^* du^i = du^i$ for i > 1,

and $j^* du^1 = 0$. By taking j^* on Equation (30.1), we have

$$\hat{\varphi}^* \eta = j^* \hat{\varphi} \eta$$

$$= j^* \left(\sum_{i=1}^k (-1)^{i-1} h_i du^1 \wedge \dots d\hat{u}^i \wedge \dots \wedge du^k \right)$$

$$= j^* (h_1 du^2 \wedge \dots \wedge du^k)$$

$$= \hat{h}_1 du^2 \wedge \dots \wedge du^k, \qquad (\dagger)$$

where $\hat{h}_1 = j^* h_1$. That is, we have

$$\hat{h}_1(u^2,\ldots,u^k) = h_1(0,u^2,\ldots,u^k).$$

Now taking d of Equation (30.1), we have

$$d(\varphi^*\eta) = \sum_{i=1}^k (-1)^{i-1} \left(\sum_{l=1}^k \frac{\partial h_i}{\partial u^l} du^l \right) \wedge du^1 \wedge \dots \wedge d\hat{u}^i \wedge \dots \wedge du^k$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^k (-1)^{i-1} \frac{\partial h_i}{\partial u^i} du^i \wedge du^1 \wedge \dots \wedge d\hat{u}^i \wedge \dots \wedge du^k$$

$$= \left(\sum_{i=1}^k \frac{\partial h_i}{\partial u^i} \right) du^1 \wedge \dots \wedge du^k. \tag{*}$$

We are now ready to take on what we want to show.

Case 1 Suppose A is open in \mathbb{R}^k , with $A \cap \partial \mathbb{H}^k = \emptyset$ and supp (h_i) is compact. So there exists a box $K = [a^1, b^1] \times ... \times [a^k, b^k]$ be a box in bb^k that completes contains supp h_i in its interior. Now extend each of the h_i by zero to a smooth function on \mathbb{R}^k . Using Equation (*), we have that the LHS of what we want is

$$\int_{A} d\varphi^{*} \eta = \int_{A} \left(\sum_{i=1}^{k} \frac{\partial h_{i}}{\partial u^{i}} du^{1} \wedge \ldots \wedge du^{k} \right)$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{k} \int_{A} \frac{\partial h_{i}}{\partial u^{i}} du^{1} \ldots du^{k}$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{k} \int_{a^{1}}^{b^{1}} \ldots \int_{a^{k}}^{b^{k}} \frac{\partial h_{i}}{\partial u^{i}} du^{1} \ldots du^{k}.$$

By Fubini's Theorem, we can integrate in any order. For the ith integral, integrate first wrt u^i . Then by the Fundamental Theorem

of Calculus, we have

$$\int_{a^{i}}^{b^{i}} \frac{\partial h_{i}}{\partial u^{i}} du^{i}$$

$$= h_{i}(u^{1}, \dots, u^{i-1}, b^{i}, u^{i+1}, \dots, u^{k}) - h_{i}(u^{1}, \dots, u^{i-1}, a^{i}, u^{i+1}, \dots, u^{k})$$

$$= 0 - 0 = 0,$$

since h_i is supported inside the interior of K. Thus all the integrals above are zero, i.e. the LHS of what we want is zero in this case.

On the other hand, since A is an open set in \mathbb{R}^k , we have that $A \cap \partial \mathbb{H}^k = \emptyset$, so supp $h_1 \subseteq A$ does not intersect $\partial \mathbb{H}^k$. Thus $h_1 = i^* h_1 = 0$. By Equation (†) and the fact that $K \cap \partial \mathbb{H}^k =$ $[a^2, b^2] \times \ldots \times [a^k, b^k]$, we have

$$\int_{A} \hat{\varphi}^{*} \eta = \int_{K \cap \partial \mathbb{H}^{k}} \hat{\varphi}^{*} \eta = \int_{K \cap \partial \mathbb{H}^{k}} h_{1} du^{2} \wedge \ldots \wedge du^{k}$$
$$= \int_{a^{2}}^{b^{2}} \ldots \int_{a^{k}}^{b^{k}} \hat{h}_{i} du^{2} \ldots du^{k} = 0.$$

This completes Case 1.

Case 2 Suppose A is not open in \mathbb{R}^k . Then $A \cap \partial \mathbb{H}^k \neq \emptyset$. This time, let

$$K = [a^1, 0] \times [a^2, b^2] \times \ldots \times [a^k, b^k]$$

be a box in \mathbb{H}^k such that supp h_i is contained in the union of the interior of K with $\partial \mathbb{H}^k$. Once again, extend each h_i by zero to a smooth function on \mathbb{H}^k . Using Equation (*), we have

$$\int_{A} d(\varphi^{*}\eta) = \int_{K} d(\varphi^{*}\eta)$$

$$= \int_{K} \sum_{i=1}^{k} \left(\frac{\partial h_{i}}{\partial u^{i}}\right) du^{1} \wedge \dots \wedge du^{k}$$

$$= \int_{a^{1}}^{0} \int_{a^{2}}^{b^{2}} \dots \int_{a^{k}}^{b^{k}} \left(\sum_{i=1}^{k} \frac{\partial h_{i}}{\partial u^{i}}\right) du^{1} \dots du^{k}$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{k} \int_{a^{1}}^{0} \int_{a^{2}}^{b^{2}} \dots \int_{a^{k}}^{b^{k}} \frac{\partial h_{i}}{\partial u^{i}} du^{1} \dots du^{k}.$$

Since the h_i 's are smooth, we can apply Fubini's Theorem and integrate in any order we want. For the i^{th} integral, integrate first wrt u^i . If i > 1, then by the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus, we have

$$\int_{a^{1}}^{0} \frac{\partial h_{1}}{\partial u^{1}} du^{1}$$

$$= h_{1}(0, u^{2}, \dots, u^{k}) - h_{1}(a^{1}, \dots, u^{k})$$

$$= \hat{h}_{1}(u^{2}, \dots, u^{k}) - 0$$

$$= \hat{h}_{1}(u^{2}, \dots, u^{k}).$$

Thus we have that the LHS of our desired equation is

$$\int_A d(\varphi^*\eta) = \int_{a^2}^{b^2} \dots \int_{a^k}^{b^k} \hat{h}_1 du^2 \dots du^k.$$

By Equation (*) and the fact that $K \cap d\mathbb{H}^k = [a^2, b^2] \times ... \times [a^k, b^k]$, we have that

$$\int_{\hat{A}} \hat{\varphi}^* \eta = \int_{K \cap \partial \mathbb{H}^k} \hat{\varphi}^* \eta$$

$$= \int_{K \cap \partial \mathbb{H}^k} h_1 du^2 \wedge \ldots \wedge du^k$$

$$= \int_{a^2}^{b^2} \ldots \int_{a^k}^{b^k} \hat{h}_1 du^2 \ldots du^k,$$

thus the RHS of the desired equation agree with the LHS in this case as well.

Remark 30.1.1

In the special case when $\partial M = \emptyset$ *, Stokes' Theorem says that*

$$\int_{M} d\omega = 0.$$

Remark 30.1.2

We saw that the proof reduces to using the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus (FTC). In fact, the FTC is a special case of Stokes' Theorem.

What is a 0-dimensional submanifold? Locally, it 'looks like' open sets in $\mathbb{R}^0 = \{0\}$. So a 0-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n is a collection of points in \mathbb{R}^n . If M is 0-dimensional and compact, then it is a finite set of (distinct) points.

An orientation on 0-dimensional $V = \{0\}$ is simply a choice of sign.

Hence a compact 0-dimensional submanifold on \mathbb{R}^n is a finite set of points $\{p_1,\ldots,p_m\}$ with sign ± 1 attached to each point. Let $M=\{p_1,\ldots,p_k\}$ be a oriented, compact, 0-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n .

$$\Omega^{0}(M) = C^{\infty}(M) = \{ f : \{ p_{1}, \dots, p_{k} \} \to \mathbb{R} \}.$$

$$\int_{M} f = \sum_{j=1}^{m} \pm f(p_j),$$

where \pm corresponds to the choice of the orientation.

Let M = [a, b] be a closed and bounded interval. Then M is a compact, oriented, 1-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^1 . Let $f \in C^{\infty}([a,b])$. Then $df = \frac{df}{dt} dt \in \Omega^1(M)$. Then Stokes' Theorem says that

$$\int_{M} df = \int_{\partial M} f = (+1)f(b) + (-1)f(a)$$

Part V

Differential Geometry

31.1 More Linear Algebra

1.1.1 Hodge Star Operators

Let *V* be *n*-dimensional real vector space with an inner product

$$\langle\cdot,\cdot\rangle:V\times V\to\mathbb{R}$$

such that

- 1. (bilinearity) $\langle v, w \rangle$ is linear in v and linear in w;
- 2. (symmetry) $\langle v, w \rangle = \langle w, v \rangle$; and
- 3. (positive definite) $\langle v, v \rangle \ge 0$ and $\langle v, v \rangle = 0 \iff v = 0$.

Recall from A5Q8 that we get an induced inner product on $\Lambda^k(V)$, for $1 \le k \le n$, given by

$$\langle v_1 \wedge \ldots \wedge v_k, w_1 \wedge \ldots \wedge w_k \rangle = \det(\langle v_i, w_i \rangle),$$

and when k = 0, then $\Lambda^0(V) = \mathbb{R}$.

Fix an orientation μ on V, where $0 \neq \mu \in \Lambda^n(V)$. Note that we may fix a μ such that $\|\mu\|$ since we may simply rescale the choice by a positive factor.

■ Definition 91 (Hodge Star Operator)

Define a map

$$*: \Lambda^k(V) \to \Lambda^{n-k}(V),$$

called the **Hodge Star operator**, as follows: let $\alpha \in \Lambda^k(V)$, and we define

$$\langle *\alpha, \beta \rangle = \alpha \wedge \beta$$

for all $\beta \in \Lambda^{n-k}(V)$.

66 Note 31.1.1

This uniquely determines $*\alpha \in \Lambda^{n-k}(V)$.

Since $\langle \cdot, \beta \rangle$ are linear in \cdot and $(\cdot) \wedge \beta$, * is a linear map.

Claim: * is an isomorphism Suppose * $\alpha = 0 \in \Lambda^{n-k}(V)$. We have $\alpha \wedge \beta = 0$ for all β , which means $\alpha = 0$. Notice that

$$\dim(\Lambda^k(V)) = \binom{n}{k} = \binom{n}{n-k} = \dim(\Lambda^{n-k}(V)).$$

Our claim follows from Rank-Nullity.

Let's look at * in terms of orthonormal basis. Let e_1, \ldots, e_n be an orthonormal basis of V (this exists by Gram-Schmidt). By A5Q8, we know that

$$e_{i_1} \wedge ... \wedge e_{i_k}$$
, for $1 \le i_1 < i_2 < ... < i_k \le n$

is an othonormal basis for $\Lambda^k(V)$. Then

$$\mu = e_1 \wedge \ldots \wedge e_n$$

has length one and represent the orientation induced by $\{e_1, \ldots, e_n\}$.

Let $I = (i_1, i_2, ..., i_k)$ be a strictly-increasing multi-index. Then for $e_{i_1} \wedge ... \wedge e_{i_k} \in \Lambda^k(V)$, we have that

$$*(e_{1_i} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{i_k}) = \sum_{I} c_{I} e_{j_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{j_{n-k}},$$

where *J* is a strictly-increasing multi-index of length n - k. Then

$$\langle *(e_{i_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{i_k}), e_{l_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{l_{n-k}} \rangle$$

$$= \langle \sum_{J} C_J e_{j_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{j_{n-k}}, e_{l_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{l_{n-k}} \rangle$$

$$= e_{i_1} \wedge e_{i_k} \wedge e_{l_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{l_{n-k}}$$

$$= 0$$

where the final equality follows unless *L* is the **complementary** index.

Note

$$\langle \sum_{J} C_{J} e_{j_{1}} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{j_{n-k}}, e_{l_{1}} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{l_{n-k}} \rangle C_{L} \mu.$$

Let \hat{I} be the complementary multi-index of I.

Then $C_L = 0$ unless $L = \hat{I}$. Then

$$C_{\hat{I}}\mu = e_{i_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{l_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{l_{n-k}} = \pm \mu$$
,

where the sign is a permutation that takes

$$e_{i_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{i_k} \wedge e_{l_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{l_{n-k}} \rightarrow e_1 \wedge e_n = \mu.$$

Therefore, we have that

$$*(e_{i_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{i_k}) = ce_{l_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{l_{n-k}}$$

when $L = \hat{I}$, such that

$$c\mu = e_{i_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{i_k} \wedge e_{l_1} \wedge \ldots e_{l_{n-k}}.$$

Example 31.1.1

When n = 3, let e_1, e_2, e_3 be an oriented basis of V. Then $\mu = e_1 \wedge e_2 \wedge e_3 \wedge e_4 \wedge e_5 \wedge e_6 \wedge e_6$ e_3 . Then

$$*e_1 = e_2 \wedge e_3$$

because $\alpha \wedge \beta = e_1 \wedge e_2 \wedge e_3 = \mu$.

Note that

$$\{e_1 \wedge e_2.e_1 \wedge e_3, e_2 \wedge e_3\}$$

is a basis on $\Lambda^2(V)$.

Now

$$*e_2 = -e_1 \wedge e_3 = e_3 \wedge e_1$$

since $e_2 \wedge e_1 \wedge e_3 = -\mu$

Also,

$$*e_3 = e_1 \wedge e_2.$$

Note that $*1 = \mu$ and $*\mu = 1$, for any dimension.



$$\Lambda^k(V) \stackrel{*}{\underset{\cong}{\longrightarrow}} \Lambda^{n-k} \stackrel{*}{\underset{\cong}{\longrightarrow}} \Lambda^k(V).$$

Claim: $*^2 = (-1)^{k(n-k)}$ on $\Lambda^k(V)$



$$*(e_{i_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{i_k}) = ce_{j_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{j_{n-k}}$$

and

$$c\mu = e_{i_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e - i_k \wedge e_{j_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{j_{n-k}}.$$

We have

$$*^{2}(e_{i_{1}}\wedge\ldots\wedge e_{i_{k}})=c(*(e_{j_{1}}\wedge\ldots\wedge e_{j_{n-k}}))=cbe_{i_{1}}\wedge\ldots\wedge e_{i_{k}}$$

where

$$b\mu = e_{j_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge e_{j_{n-k}} \wedge e_{i_1} \wedge \ldots e_{i_k}.$$

So

$$c\mu = b\mu(-1)^{k(n-k)},$$

and so

$$bc = (-1)^{k(n-k)}.$$

Example 31.1.2

Back to the example: note that if n is odd (which is our case), we

hvae

$$(-1)^{k(n-k)} = 1$$

for any k. So $*^2 = 1$ always, on odd dimensional spaces.

If n is even, then

$$*^2 = (-1)^k$$

on $\Lambda^k(V)$.



* is an isometry i.e.

$$\langle *\alpha, *\gamma \rangle = \langle \alpha, \gamma \rangle$$

for all $\alpha, \gamma \in \Lambda^k(V)$.

Proof

$$\langle *\alpha, \beta \rangle \mu = \alpha \wedge \beta (-1)^{k(n-k)} \beta \wedge \alpha$$
$$= (-1)^{k(n-k)} \langle *\beta, \alpha \rangle \mu$$

$$\langle *\alpha, \beta \rangle = (-1)^{k(n-k)} \langle \alpha, *\beta \rangle$$

Then

$$\langle *\alpha, *\gamma \rangle = \langle \alpha, (-1)^{k(n-k)} *^2 \gamma \rangle = \langle \alpha, \gamma \rangle$$

The following is more common as the definition of the Hodge star in the literature.

Corollary 72

 $\forall \alpha, \gamma \in \Lambda^k(V)$, we have

$$\langle \alpha, \gamma \rangle \mu = \alpha \wedge *\gamma.$$



Let $\beta = *\gamma$ for some unique γ , then

$$\langle *\alpha, \beta \rangle \mu = \alpha \wedge \beta$$

and

$$\langle *\alpha, *\gamma \rangle \mu = \alpha \wedge *\gamma = \langle \alpha, \gamma \rangle \mu.$$

Let's put all these on submanifolds of \mathbb{R}^n .

On \mathbb{R}^n , we have the standard inner product:

$$\langle x, y \rangle = \sum_{i=1}^{n} x^{i} y^{i}.$$

This induces an inner product on each tangent space to \mathbb{R}^n via the canonical isomorphism.

Explicitly, if
$$X_p = a^i \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} \Big|_p$$
 and $Y_p = b^i \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} \Big|_p$ then

$$\langle X_p, Y_p \rangle = \sum_{i=1}^n a^i b^i,$$

ie.

$$\left\{ \frac{\partial}{\partial x^1} \Big|_{p'}, \dots, \frac{\partial}{\partial x^n} \Big|_{p} \right\}$$

is an orthonormal basis of $T_p\mathbb{R}^n$.

Let M be a k-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n . Then

$$T_pM\subseteq T_p\mathbb{R}^n$$
.

The restriction of $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ to $T_p M$ is a positive definite inner products on $T_p M$.

Suppose M is oriented, then T_pM has an orientation and an inner product.

Additional Topics / Review

A.1 Rank-Nullity Theorem

■ Definition A.1 (Kernel and Image)

Let V and W be vector spaces, and let $T \in L(V, W)$. The **kernel** (or **null** space) of T is defined as

$$\ker(T) := \{ v \in V \mid Tv = 0 \},$$

i.e. the set of vectors in V such that they are mapped to 0 under T.

The *image* (or *range*) of T is defined as

$$\operatorname{Img}(T) = \{ Tv \mid v \in V \},\,$$

that is the set of all images of vectors of V under T.

It can be shown that for a linear map $T \in L(V, W)$, ker(T) and Img(T) are subspaces of V and W, respectively. As such, we can define the following:

■ Definition A.2 (Rank and Nullity)

Let V, W be vector spaces, and let $T \in L(V, W)$. If ker(T) and Img(T) are finite-dimensional 1 , then we define the nullity of T as

$$nullity(T) := \dim \ker(T),$$

¹ In this course, this is always the case, since we are only dealing with finite dimensional real vector spaces.

and the rank of T as

$$rank(T) := dim Img(T)$$
.

66 Note A.1.1

From the action of a linear transformation, we observe that the larger the nullity, the smaller the rank. Put in another way, the more vectors are sent to 0 by the linear transformation, the smaller the range.

Similarly, the larger the rank, the smaller the nullity.

This observation gives us the Rank-Nullity Theorem.

■ Theorem A.1 (Rank-Nullity Theorem)

Let V and W be vector spaces, and $T \in L(V, W)$. If V is finite-dimensional, then

$$\operatorname{nullity}(T) + \operatorname{rank}(T) = \dim(V).$$

From the Rank-Nullity Theorem, we can make the following observations about the relationships between injection and surjection, and the nullity and rank.

♦ Proposition A.2 (Nullity of Only 0 and Injectivity)

Let V and W be vector spaces, and $T \in L(V, W)$. Then T is injective iff $\operatorname{nullity}(T) = \{0\}$.

Surjection and injectivity come hand-in-hand when we have the following special case.

♦ Proposition A.3 (When Rank Equals The Dimension of the Space)

Let V and W be vector spaces of equal (finite) dimension, and let $T \in$ L(V, W). TFAE

- 1. T is injective;
- 2. T is surjective;
- 3. $\operatorname{rank}(T) = \dim(V)$.

Note that the proof for **\langle** Proposition A.3 requires the understanding that $ker(T) = \{0\}$ implies that nullity(T) = 0. See this explanation on Math SE.

A.2 Inverse and Implicit Function Theorems

This space is dedicated to a little exploration of the inverse and implicit function theorems. For now, the theorems themselves will be noted down.

■ Theorem A.4 (Inverse Function Theorem)

Let $F: U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n$ be a smooth mapping, and let V = F(U). Suppose p is a point in U where the Jacobian $(DF)_p$ is invertible. Then

- there exists an open subset $U' \subseteq U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ such that $p \in U'$, and
- an open subset $V' \subseteq V \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ such that $q = F(p) \in V'$, and
- a smooth function $G: V' \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n$ with U' = G(V') that satisfies G(F(x)) = x for all $x \in U'$, and F(G(y)) = y for all $y \in V'$.

66 Note A.2.1

• When restricted to U', the mapping F is invertible with a smooth inverse F'-1=G.

• This means that the restriction of F to the neighbourhood U' of p is a diffeomorphism of U' onto V' = F(U'), its image.

■ Theorem A.5 (Implicit Function Theorem)

Let $F: W \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{n+m} \to \mathbb{R}^n$ be a smooth mapping, and suppose $F(q, p) = \mathbf{0}$ for some $(q, p) \in W$. Let A be the $n \times n$ matrix $A_{ij} = \frac{\partial F^i}{\partial y^j}(q, p)$. Suppose $\det A \neq 0$. Then there exists

- an open neighbourhood $W' \subseteq W$ of (q, p) and
- an open neighbourhood U of p in \mathbb{R}^m and
- a smooth mapping $H: U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m \to \mathbb{R}^n$

such that

$$\{(y,x) \in W' : F(y,x) = \mathbf{0}\} = \{(H(x),x) : x \in U\}$$

That is, for a set of points $(y, x) \in W'$ that satisfy F(y, x) = 0, we can write y as a smooth function H(x) of x.



Friedberg, S. H., Insel, A. J., and Spence, L. E. (2002). *Linear Algebra*. Pearson Education, 4th edition.

Karigiannis, S. (2019). *PMATH 365: Differential Geometry (Winter 2019)*. University of Waterloo.

Weisstein, E. W. (n.d.). Level set. MathWorld – A Wolfram Math Resource. http://mathworld.wolfram.com/LevelSet.html.



1-Form, 92	codimension one submanifold,
C^{∞} , 65	139
$T_{\varphi(u)}\varphi(U)$, 128	Compatible Orientation, 173
$f \sim_p g$, 78	component functions, 64, 93, 103
j th Coordinate Curve, 128	component functions of the vec-
<i>k</i> -Form, 33	tor field, 86
k -Form on \mathbb{R}^n , 101	Continuity, 64
<i>k</i> -Forms at <i>p</i> , 100	Converse of the Local Version
k-vectors, 53	of the Implicit Submanifold
k^{th} Exterior Power of T , 54	Theorem, 144
	Coordinate Vector, 20
algebra, 153	cotangent bundle, 92
allowable local parameterization,	Cotangent Space, 92, 161
133	Cotangent Vector, 92
	cover, 133
Basis, 20	curve, 139
Boundary of a Submanifold, 205	
Boundary of the Half Space, 200	Decomposable <i>k</i> -form, 40
Boundary point in the Half	Degree of a Form, 46
Space, 201	Derivation, 81, 153
Boundary Point on a Submani-	Derivation on C_p^{∞} , 91
fold, 204	Determinant, 54
bundle of <i>k</i> -forms, 101	determinant, 23
	diffeomorphic, 65
Closed, 63	Diffeomorphism, 65
Closed Forms, 120	Differential, 66
co-vectors, 31	differential, 97
codimension 140	Directional Derivative 75

dinactional domination and	In adains ((an
directional derivative, 159 Distance, 60	Jacobian, 66, 97
dot product, 60	V 1
Double Dual Space, 27	Kernel, 223
Dual Basis, 25	Kronecker Delta, 24
dual basis, 100	
Dual Map, 29	Leibniz Rule for Directional
Dual Space, 24	Derivatives, 76
Duai Space, 24	Level Set, 137
Equivalent Curves 70	Linear Isomorphism, 22
Equivalent Curves, 70	Linear Map, 19
Euclidean inner product, 60	Linearity of Directional Deriva-
Exact Forms, 120	tives, 76
Exterior Derivative, 97, 119, 169	Local parameterizations, 133
_	Local Version of the Implicit
Forms, 162	Submanifold Theorem, 143
Comment Francisco	
Germ of Functions, 78	maximal cover, 133
germs, 153	Maximal Rank, 137
graded commutative, 47	module, 91, 95, 104
Half Chara 100	
Half Space, 199	Natural Pairing, 26
Hodge Star Operator, 217	non-orientable, 172
Homeomorphism, 64	non-standard basis, 21
hypersurface, 139	null space, 223
*	Nullity, 223
Image, 223	3 . 3
Immersion, 125	open, 61
Implicit Function Theorem, 226	Open Ball, 61
infinitely differentiable, 65	Open set in a Half Space, 200
inner product, 60	-
Integral over Manifolds, 195, 198	Opposite orientation, 23
Integration of Forms on Eu-	Orientable Submanifolds, 172
clidean Space, 194	Orientation, 59
Interior point in the Half Space,	
201	parameterization, 65, 126
Inverse Function Theorem, 225	parameterized Submanifold, 126
invertible, 23	Partition of Unity, 189

```
Points on the parameterization,
                                    Submanifolds, 129
                                    subordinate, 189
    141
Pullback, 48, 107
                                    super commutative, 47
Pullback Maps, 165
                                    Support, 188
Pullback of 0-forms, 111
                                    surface of revolution, 135
pushforward, 107, 125
                                    Tangent Bundle, 85
                                    tangent map, 66
range, 223
Rank, 223
                                    Tangent Space, 71, 128
Rank-Nullity Theorem, 224
                                    Tangent Vector, 71
                                    The Chain Rule, 67
                                    Transition Map, 131
Same orientation, 23
skew-commutative, 106
                                    Vector Field, 86
skewed-commutative, 47
                                    Vector Fields, 162
Smooth 1-Forms, 93
Smooth k-Forms on \mathbb{R}^n, 102
                                    Velocity, 69
                                    Velocity Vectors, 150
Smooth Bump Functions, 186
Smooth Curve, 68, 146
Smooth Functions, 145
                                    Wedge Product, 45, 163
Smooth functions in the Half
                                    Wedge Product of k-Forms, 105
    Space, 201
smooth reparameterization, 65
Smooth Vector Fields, 86, 163
Smoothness, 65
Space of k-Forms on \mathbb{R}^n, 100
Space of k-forms on V, 37
space of germs, 78
space of linear operators on V, 19
standard 1-forms, 92
standard 2-torus, 141
standard k-forms, 101
standard basis, 21
standard orientation, 24
standard vector fields, 86
stereographic projection, 134
Stokes' Theorem, 199
Submanifold with Boundary, 202
```